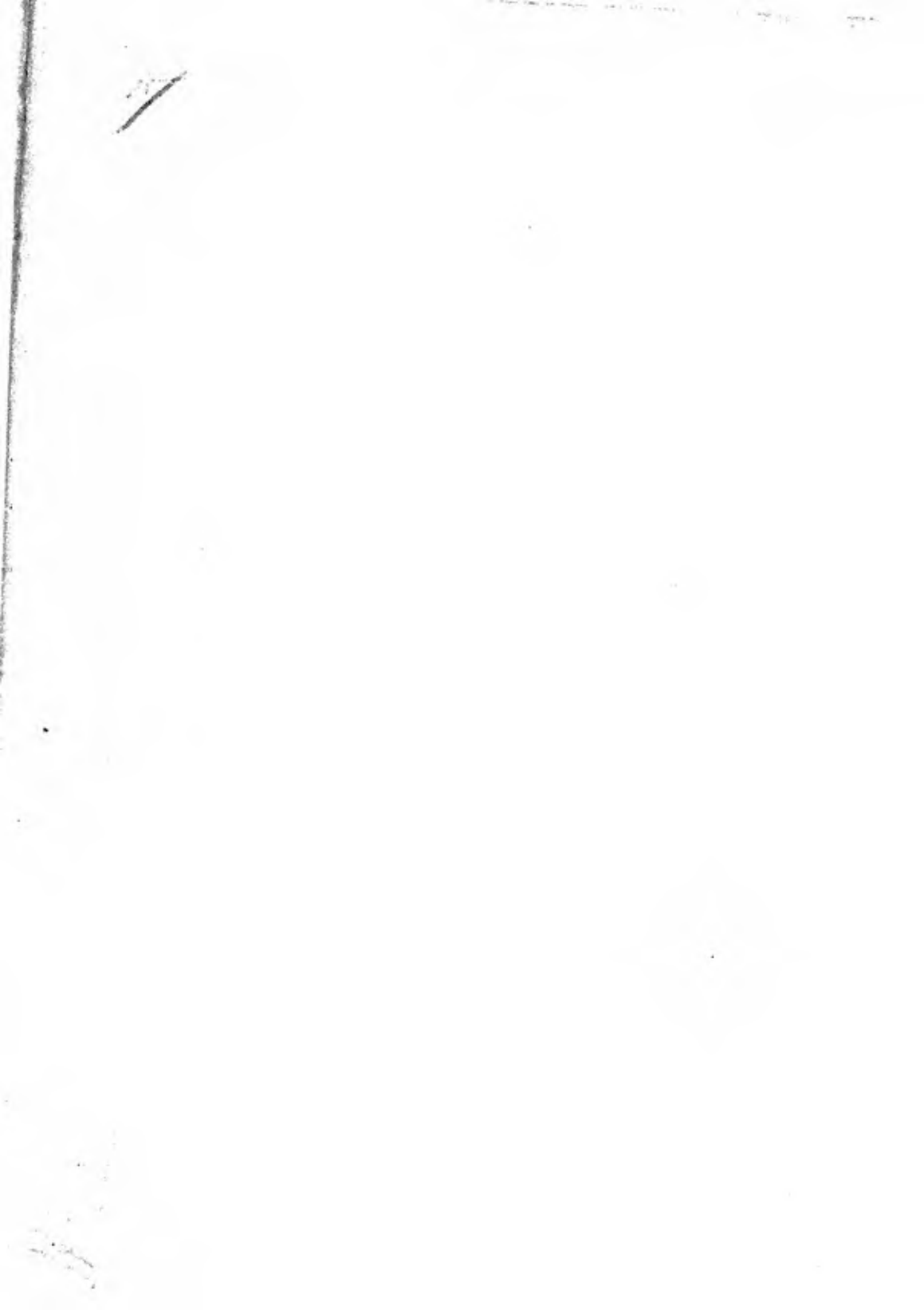


GOVERNMENT OF INDIA
DEPARTMENT OF ARCHAEOLOGY
CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL
LIBRARY

CLASS _____

CALL No. 522.0955 Jam-Ken

D.G.A. 79.



The Planetary Equatorium
of
Jamshīd Ghiyāth al-Dīn al-Kāshī

Princeton Oriental Studies

Volume 18

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

OF JAMSHĪD GHIYĀTH AL-DĪN AL-KĀSHĪ

(d. 1429)



An Edition of the Anonymous Persian
Manuscript 75[44b] in the Garrett Collection
at Princeton University
Being a Description of Two Computing Instruments

*The Plate of Heavens
and the Plate of Conjunctions*



WITH TRANSLATION AND COMMENTARY BY

E. S. KENNEDY

572.0953
Jew/K

1960

PRINCETON UNIVERSITY PRESS

PRINCETON, NEW JERSEY

Copyright © 1960, by Princeton University Press

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

CINEMA TECHNOLOGICAL
LIBRARY, NEW DELHI.

Acc. No 10542

Date 24/2/61

Call No. 522.09537 Jan/Ken

Printed in the United States of America
By the Meriden Gravure Company, Meriden, Connecticut

To
my foster mother
Annie E. Kennedy

P R E F A C E

This book presents, with translation and commentary, the text of a Persian manuscript in the Garrett Collection at Princeton University. The manuscript describes the construction and use of two astronomical computing instruments invented by the fifteenth century Iranian scientist Jamshīd ibn Masʿūd ibn Mahmūd, Ghiyāth al-Dīn al-Kāshī (or al-Kāshānī). Our fund of knowledge concerning the work of this individual has been materially increased in recent years, particularly by the studies of the late Paul Luckey in Germany, and by the fruitful collaboration of B.A. Rosenfeld and A.P. Yushkevich in Russia. The reader will find their publications listed in the bibliography at the end of this volume.

Little enough has been known about the life of Kāshī (as we shall call him hereafter), and we have been able to supplement that little, principally by examining the introductions and colophons of Kāshī manuscripts. The results are assembled in the biographical sketch immediately following the table of contents.

The succeeding section recites the relations between our anonymous Persian text and the two versions of a book by Kāshī himself on which it is based.

There follows the facsimile text and translation, arranged for immediate reference with corresponding pages and lines opposite each other. After this comes the commentary to the text. In general, topics are treated in the order in which they appear in the manuscript. Where it has been found convenient to digress from this order, a statement has been inserted indicating the proper section. When sections are related to a particular passage in the text, this passage has been specified in parentheses following the section title. All such references to the text give folio and line, separated by a colon.

It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the leading concepts of Ptolemaic astronomy, of which [41] and [42] contain

P R E F A C E

readily available expositions. Here and in the sequel, numbers enclosed in square brackets refer to items in the bibliography at the end of the book.

The bulk of the manuscript is taken up with an instrument called by Kāshī Ṭabaq al-Manātiq, which we translate as "Plate (or Tray) of Heavens." It is an example of the class of devices known as equatoria, analogue computers on which the various Ptolemaic planetary configurations were laid out to scale. They thus yield solutions to such problems as that of finding the true longitude of a planet at a given time. Kāshī's equatorium is only one element in a tradition stretching through sixteen centuries in time, and in space from Western Europe to Central Asia via North Africa and the Near East. The story of the other instruments, and the Plate of Heavens' place therein, has been delineated admirably by D.J. Price in his publication [42] of the Chaucerian equatorium - there is no need to repeat it here.

The second instrument, the "Plate of Conjunctions" (Lawh al-Ittisālāt), is a simple device for performing a linear interpolation.

A number of the problems raised by the manuscript have been dealt with in a preliminary way in papers published over a period of years. This is an attempt simultaneously to dispose of the remaining problems, to revise, complete, and correct previous solutions, and to put before the public the primary source on which they are based. In addition to presenting the philologists with an opportunity to pick apart the work of a translator whose formal training has been in mathematics, this will serve to present intact a medieval scientific work, a very small link in the chain which leads from the tallystick to the electronic computer. For the manifold shortcomings of the result the editor, like the anonymous author of the manus-

P R E F A C E

cript, craves correction "with the musk-dripping pen" of forebearance.

Acknowledgments

In thus bringing to a close a task, the working out of which has been a source of much satisfaction over a long time, it is pleasant indeed to set down the names of some of the many friends who have been helpful. Professor Yahya Armajani called to my attention the equatorium manuscript in the first place. In the office of the late Professor George Sarton I was privileged to associate with Dr. Alexander Pogo, and from him gained my first real insight into planetary motions. Professors N. Seifpur Fatemi and Jalal Homa'i, and Dr. Iraj Dehqan answered many questions connected with the reading of the Persian text. The commentary has been improved as a result of many discussions with Professor Derek Price, whose book on the Chaucer equatorium will continue to maintain itself as the model of publications of this genre.

The contributions acknowledged above, important as they are, can be regarded as peripheral and as not involving the individuals in errors which the book may contain. It remains to name another associate, one who cannot escape his portion of responsibility for whatever merit this work has. To the counsel and example of O. Neugebauer, best of friends and keenest of critics, I owe such competence as I have acquired in the history of the exact sciences.

The work was made possible by the Rockefeller Foundation, Brown University, the Institute for Advanced Study and a Fulbright grant. The Princeton University Department of Oriental Languages and Literatures and the Princeton Univer-

P R E F A C E

sity Press have been uniformly cooperative in making arrangements for publication.

Copy for the photo-offset reproduction was typed by Mrs. Kawthar A. Shomar with her customary accuracy, elegance, and dispatch.

E.S.K.

C O N T E N T S

	<u>page</u>
Preface	vii

INTRODUCTION

Biographical Material on the Inventor	1
The History of the Text and its Versions	9
Concordance of the Text Versions	11

TEXT OF THE MANUSCRIPT

(with translation on opposite pages.)

	<u>folio</u>		
Introduction	2v		19
Mention of the inventor and his instrument	3v		23
Dedication to the anonymous author's patron, Bayazid II	4r		25
Table of Contents of Treatise I	4v		27
Table of Contents of Treatise II	5r		29

TREATISE I. ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INSTRUMENT

CALLED THE PLATE OF HEAVENS 5v 31

Chapter 1. On the Construction of the Disk
 and the Ring 5v 31

Chapter 2. On the Drawing of the Apogees,
 Centers, Deferents, the Opposite Point,
 and the Equant 7r 37

Chapter 3. On Drawing the Equating Diameter,
 Latitude Points, Latitude Lines, Begin-
 nings of the Sectors, the Picture of the
 Plate, and the Deferents, Marks, Circles,
 and Lines 8v 43

C O N T E N T S

	<u>folio</u>	<u>page</u>
Table of the Sector Beginnings	10v	51
Chapter 4. On the Construction of the Alidade and Ruler	11v	55
Chapter 5. On Drawing the Tables of Mean (Motions), etc.	13r	61
Table of Mean Motions	14v	67
Conclusion. On the Construction of the Plate of Conjunctions	15r	69
TREATISE II. ON THE OPERATION OF THE PLATE OF HEAVENS		
Chapter 1. On the Arrangement of the Instrument	18r	81
Chapter 2. On the Extraction of Mean Positions	18r	81
Chapter 3. On the Determination of the True Longitude of the Sun, its Equation, and its Distance from the Center of the Universe	19v	87
Chapter 4. On the Determination of the Moon's True Longitude	20r	89
Chapter 5. On the Determination of the True Longitude of the Planets	21r	93
Chapter 6. On the Determination of Equations, and the Center, and the Adjusted Anomaly	21v	95
Chapter 7. On the Determination of the Latitudes of the Six Planets	22r	97
Chapter 8. On the Determination of the Distances of the Planets from the Center of the Universe	26v	115
Chapter 9. On the Determination of Planetary Retrogradations and Forward Motions, and their Times	28r	121

CONTENTS

	<u>folio</u>	<u>page</u>
Chapter 10. On the Determination of Apogee and Epicyclic Sectors	30r	129
Chapter 11. On the Determination of Lunar Eclipses	31r	133
Chapter 12. On the Determination of Solar Eclipses	33r	141
Table of Adjusted Lunar Parallax Components in Latitude and Longitude	33v	143
Chapter 13. On the Determination of the Mean of Transfer by Means of the True Longitude of the Sun at a Given Time, and the Elapsed Time after the Transfer	34v	147
Chapter 14. On the Determination of the True Altitude from the Apparent, and the Apparent Altitude from the True, and Parallax in the Altitude Circle	35r	149
Chapter 15. On the Determination of the Equation of Time	36r	153
Conclusion. On the Operation of the Plate of Conjunctions	37r	157

COMMENTARY

1. The Introduction of the Manuscript	164
2. Construction of the Disk and Ring	164
3. The <u>Jummal</u> System of Writing Numbers	166
4. Planetary Apogees	167
Table 1	168
5. Laying Out the Planetary Deferents	168
Table 2	169
6. Deferents of the Two Luminaries	170
7. The Deferent of Mercury	170

CONTENTS

	<u>page</u>
8. An Oval Deferent for the Moon	171
9. Marking the Equant Centers	173
10. Alternative Plate Layouts	175
11. The Medieval Sine Function	176
12. The Latitude Circles on the Plate	176
13. The Latitude Points	178
14. The Alidade and Ruler	180
15. The Difference Marks - Epicycle Radii	184
16. The Table of Mean Positions and Motions	184
17. "Squeezing" Mean Motion Parameters	186
18. The Mean Motion Base Parameters	187
19. Mean Motions in the <u>Nuzhah</u>	188
20. Determination of True Solar Longitude	190
21. Determination of True Lunar Longitude	192
22. Determination of a Planetary True Longitude	193
23. The Planetary Equations	195
24. The Lunar Equations	197
25. The Latitude of the Moon	198
26. Planetary Latitudes in the Almagest	200
27. The First Latitude of the Inferior Planets	203
28. The Second Latitude of the Inferior Planets	205
29. The Third Latitude of the Inferior Planets	210
30. Latitude of the Superior Planets	213
31. Planetary Distances	214
32. Stations and Retrogradations	214
Table 3	217
33. The Planetary Sectors	218
34. Prediction of Lunar Eclipses	222
35. Lunar Eclipse Limits	225
36. Lunar Eclipse Markings on the Ruler	228
37. Determination of the Lunar Eclipse Times	228
38. Parallax in the Altitude Circle	230

CONTENTS

	<u>page</u>
39. The Table of Parallax Components	233
40. Solar Eclipses	234
41. The Solar Mean Longitude at Equinox	236
42. The Equation of Time	238
43. The Plate of Conjunctions	241
 Persian Glossary	 245
 Bibliography	 251
 Index	 256

LIST OF FIGURES

(In the text)

The Ring and Plate, on f.11r.	52
The Plate of Conjunctions, on f.17v.	78

(Others)

Fig. 1. The Ring and Plate Layout (opp. f.11r)	53
Fig. 2. The Plate of Conjunctions (opp. f.17v)	79
Fig. 3. The Oval Deferent of Mercury	172
Fig. 4. The Ptolemaic Lunar Orbit	174
Fig. 5. The Latitude Circles and Lines, from NS	177
Fig. 6. The Alidade and Ruler, from NS	181
Fig. 7. Parallel Rulers, from NS	183
Fig. 8. The Instrument, Set Up for Finding the Sun's True Longitude	191
Fig. 9. The Instrument, Set Up for Finding Mars' True Longitude	194
Fig.10. Use of the Latitude Lines	199
Fig.11. The Tilted Deferent and Epicycle	201

CONTENTS

	<u>page</u>
Fig.12. The Planetary Nodes	203
Fig.13. Construction for the Planetary Latitudes	208
Fig.14. The Epicycle Tilted for the Third Latitude Component	211
Fig.15. Diagram for Apollonius' Theorem	215
Fig.16. A Diagram for a Partial Lunar Eclipse	224
Fig.17. A Diagram for a Total Lunar Eclipse	225
Fig.18. The Lunar Latitude Near Syzygy	227
Fig.19. The Instrument Set Up for a Lunar Eclipse Determination	229
Fig.20. The Instrument Set Up for a Parallax Determination	231
Fig.21. The Plate of Conjunctions, from NS	241

INTRODUCTION

Biographical Material on the Inventor

Our earliest fixed point in Kāshī's life is 2 June, 1406 (12 Dhū al-Hijjah, 808). On this date he observed in Kāshān, his home town in central Iran, the first of a series of three lunar eclipses (see [23]*, f.4r.)

He is the author of an Arabic treatise on the sizes and distances of the heavenly bodies, called Sullam al-samā' [22]. Most of the extant copies of this work are undated, but in [34], p.50, Krause reports that one of the Istanbul copies claims the book was finished on 1 March, 1407 (21 Ramādān, 809). This is confirmed by Tabātabā'ī ([52], p.23) on the basis of a copy at the Shrine Library in Meshed, Iran. Since this date falls during the run of eclipse observations, it follows that the treatise must have been written in Kāshān. It is dedicated to a certain wazīr designated in the manuscript only as Kamāl al-Dīn Mahmūd. Search through general histories of the period has failed thus far to produce any information whatsoever as to the identity, jurisdiction, or political affiliation of this individual. A certain Mawlā Kamāl al-Dīn Mahmūd al-Sāghirjī mentioned by Khawāndamīr ([33], vol.3, p.513) fulfills the requirements as to name and rank, but cannot have been contemporary with Kāshī. It is probably to this individual that Tabātabā'ī ([52], p.23) refers.

Sometime during the year 816 A.H. (1413/14) Kāshī completed the Khāqānī Zīj [23], written in Persian and the first of his two major works. In the introduction to it he complains that he had been working on astronomical problems for a long period, living in penury in the cities of 'Irāq (doubtless 'Irāq-i 'Ajamī, Persian 'Irāq), and most of the time in Kāshān. Having undertaken the composition of a zīj, he would have been unable

* Numbers in square brackets refer to items in the bibliography.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

to complete it except for the timely beneficence of the prince Ulugh Beg, he says, and to him he dedicated the finished work. The fact that the longitude of Shīrāz was taken as base for the mean motion tables (see Section 18 in the commentary below) does not prove that he worked there part of the time, although he may have done so. The place had been a center of astronomical activity on and off for many centuries, and Kāshī may simply have chosen as base a location better known than Kāshān. From a remark in his Miftāḥ ([47], p.176) it is clear that he was in the neighboring city of Isfahān at one time or another.

Next comes a very short (seven page) Persian treatise [20] on astronomical instruments written in January 1416 (Dhū al-Qa'da, 818) and dedicated to a Sultan Iskandar.

Soon after this, on 10 February, 1416 (10 Dhū al-Hijjah, 818), and in Kāshān, the first version of the Nuzhat al-Hada'iq was completed. The book is Kāshī's own description of the equatorium he invented. It names no patron. When next heard from, Kāshī has joined the group of scientists at the Samarqand court of Ulugh Beg. There he stayed for the rest of his life.

His career commenced during the long reign of Tamerlane. When the latter died in 1405 he was eventually succeeded by his son Shāhrukh, whose rule outlasted Kāshī's life span, and who throughout evidently retained some sort of hegemony over all of Iran. During this time Shāhrukh's son Ulugh Beg was the ruler of Samarqand, and eventually as head of the Timurid dynasty survived his father for a short time.

The Iskandar referred to above can hardly have been any other than the son of Qara Yūsuf ([12], p.127) second ruler of the Black Sheep Turcoman dynasty which established itself mainly in Azarbaijan and Mesopotamia, encroaching eventually into Fārs. Iskandar was twice defeated by Shāhrukh. Like Ulugh Beg, he achieved primacy in his dynasty only long after the death of Kāshī.

INTRODUCTION

The curious spectacle of a scientist dedicating successive writings to minor potentates in rival dynasties invites speculation. It is tempting to liken his actions to those of a modern scholar alternately wooing one and another of the affluent learned foundations in hopes of an ever more princely grant. Kāshī's short treatise on astronomical instruments [20] contains little beyond what must have been common knowledge to any competent astronomer of the day, and its composition can have cost him only the time required to write it down. He may have turned it out and dedicated it to Iskandar in order to counteract the effect of the earlier dedication to a Timurid. But ignorance of the details of political vicissitudes makes further conjectures unprofitable.

In 1417 Ulugh Beg commenced building in Samarqand a madrasah ([16], p.54), a school to house students of theology and the sciences. This impressive tiled structure is still admired by tourists from all over the world. Shortly after its completion the construction of the observatory was begun.

It was during these operations that Kāshī arrived; we do not know exactly when. Several sources (e.g. [33], vol.4, p.21) have him accompanied by a fellow-townsmen and astronomer, Mu'īn al-Dīn al-Kāshī, according to Ṭabāṭabā'ī ([52], p.6), a nephew. From this period also is a document of the greatest interest, a letter from Kāshī to his father in Kāshān. It has been published (as [53]) in the original Persian, collated and annotated by M. Ṭabāṭabā'ī from two manuscripts, one of which is in the library of the Madrasah Sepahsālār in Tehrān. The letter merits publication in facsimile with a translation into some European language. Pending this we outline its contents below.

The epistle begins with a quotation from the Qur'ān indicative of filial piety, and a statement that the writer has been too busy with the observatory to do anything else. He writes that the sultan is an extremely well educated man, in the Qur'ān,

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

in Arabic grammar, in logic, and the mathematical sciences. As an illustration of the latter he tells how the king, while on horseback, once computed in his head a solar position correct to minutes of arc. Kāshī then goes on to describe how, upon his arrival at Samarqand, he was put through his paces by the sixty or seventy other mathematicians and astronomers in attendance there. He gives as examples four of the problems propounded to him. The first involved a method of determining the projections of 1022 fixed stars on the rete of an astrolabe one cubit in diameter. The second required the laying out of the hour lines on an oblique wall for the shadow cast by a certain gnomon. The third problem demanded the construction of a hole in a wall, of such a nature that it would admit the sun's light at, and only at, the time of evening prayer, the time to be that determined by the rule of Abū Hanīfah. Lastly, he was asked to find the radius, in degrees of arc on the earth's surface, of the true horizon of a man whose height is three and a half cubits. All these and others, says Kāshī, which had baffled the best minds of the entourage, he solved with ease, thus quickly gaining intellectual paramouncy among them.

He held a low opinion of the rest of the sultan's scientific staff in general, in spite of the fact that Ulugh Beg's astronomical bent had stimulated the study of mathematics in Samarqand for the past ten years. The only one who gave him any competition at all was Qāḍīzādah al-Rūmī ([51], p.174), and Kāshī recounts in detail two occasions on which he worsted this individual. One of these was brought on by Qāḍīzādah, who had been expounding the famous zīj of al-Bīrūnī, the Masudic Canon [5], when he ran into difficulties with the proof of a theorem. Using the immemorial gambit of any mathematics teacher when faced with a like situation, he told the class, which included Ulugh Beg himself, that there must be a

INTRODUCTION

fault in the text, he had best compare it with a better copy elsewhere. After two days he was still stuck at the same place, when Kāshī just happened to turn up, explained the proof off-hand, and showed that the manuscript was correct.

In spite of this, and other exhibitions of tact and erudition on the part of Kāshī, he assures his father that relations between the two of them are of the most amicable. He agrees that Qādīzādah is the only one of the lot who knows much about the Almagest, although he is deficient in observational technique. The views of Qādīzādah on the matter have not come down to us, but it may or may not be of significance that in the prolegomena to Ulugh Beg's zīj ([54], p.5) Qādīzādah is the first of the two to receive honorable mention and extravagant praise.

Kāshī uses up a good deal of space telling his father about the ignorance of a certain Badr al-Dīn. This man, he writes, having been through a few propositions of Euclid which he is unable to apply, is like one who knows several rules of (Arabic) grammar but can write no Arabic. He states further that Badr al-Dīn is a liar. Kāshī's motive in reporting on this person is not clear.

The letter describes the status of the work in progress on the construction of instruments for the observatory. It closes with a detailed explanation intended to make clear to the layman why the taking of observations for a complete set of planetary parameters is a long process, and cannot be completed in as short a time as a year, or anything like it.

In the middle of Sha'bān, 827 (July, 1424), Kāshī finished his unprecedentedly precise π -determination, al-Risālat al-muhitīyah. Written in Arabic, this masterpiece of computational technique has been published in German [36] and Russian [47] editions, both excellent. It has no dedicatory passage.

From the same month two lunar years later (June, 1426)

dates the Samarqand rescension of the Nuzhah, and on 3 Jumādī I, 830 (2 March, 1427), Kāshī completed his second major work, the Miftāh. It is dedicated to Ulugh Beg, and has recently been published [47] with Arabic text, Russian translation, and commentary, by Rosenfeld and Yushkevich. Studies based on it are [35], [37], [44], and [7]. In the introduction to the Miftāh Kāshī gives a partial list of his own works. Other than titles already mentioned above, the following appear:

Risālat al-watar w'al-jaib, also known as Risālah fī istikhraj jaib darajat wahidah, is apparently extant both in a lithographed edition printed in Tehran in 1889, and in manuscript ([51], p.174). Marginal notes in [23], f.32r, and the lithograph edition of [17], p.3, state that the treatise was incomplete when Kāshī died and that it was finished by Qādīzādah. A copy of the lithographed collection of which it is a part is in the Parliament (Majlis) Library in Tehran. It describes an elegant iterative method of computing the sine of one degree to any required accuracy. No translation of this risālah has been published, although a commentary on it is available in French [54] and in Russian [47] translations, and a considerable literature in European languages has accumulated about it (see, e.g. [1]).

The Zīj al-tashīlāt is not extant as such, but is probably the set of tables and accompanying explanation for a simplified method of computing planetary positions as worked out by Kāshī. In his Khāqānī Zīj ([23], ff.142r-155r) these tables occupy a section distinct from the planetary tables of standard type.

In addition to those listed in the Miftāh al-hisāb, the following treatises were written by or attributed to him:

Miftāh al-asbāb fī 'ilm al-zīj, listed in the Mosul catalogue [40].

Risālah dar sakht-i asturlāb listed in the Meshed catalogue

INTRODUCTION

([38], Ms. math. 84).

Risālah fī ma'rifat samt al-qiblah min dā'irat hindiyah, also listed in the Meshed catalogue.

Risālat 'amal al-darb bi'l-takht w'al-turāb is also included in the Tehran lithographed edition of 1889 of which a copy is in the Parliament Library in Tehran.

Al-risālat al-iqlīlāminah is mentioned by Kāshī himself in the Samarqand version of the Muzhah ([19], p.311).

Kāshī's statements about the length of time required to complete the observations proved all too true. In the prolegomena to the zīj ([54], p.5) based on them, his royal patron Ulugh Beg, laments his death early in the course of the work. His collaborator and rival, Qādīzādah, also died before the zīj was finished. On the title page, the India Office copy of the Khaqānī Zīj [23] bears a note saying that on the morning of Wednesday, 19 Ramadān, 832 (22 June, 1429), at the observatory outside Samarqand there died the "mighty master, Ghiyāth al-Millāh w'al-Dīn, Jamshīd." According to Tabātabā'ī ([52], p.19) the incomplete copy of the same zīj in the Shrine Library at Meshed has the same annotation. That Kāshī left behind him more than his scientific works is witnessed by the British Museum manuscript of his Miftāh ([6], p.199) which has the following curious colophon:

Verily I finished copying this honorable manuscript on the second day of the month of Shawwāl, year 997, (14 August, 1589). It was copied (or checked ?) by the one (who is) indigent (for the sake) of God, al-Razzāq, son of 'Abdallāh, son of 'Abd al-Razzāq, son of Jamshīd, son of Mas'ūd, son of Jamshīd, the author of this noble book.

We lack evidence on which to pass judgment, or even to assess, Kāshī's personal character. Concerning him the author of the

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

Haft iqlīm (see [45], vol.ii, p.45) has this to say:

The former (Kāshī) was ignorant of the etiquette of courts, but Ulugh Beg was obliged to put up with his boorish manners because he could not dispense with his assistance.

In the letter to his father he does not depict himself as the proverbially shrinking violet. At the same time this was a personal communication addressed to a parent, and presumably not intended for publication. And on the basis of the evidence at hand we can only agree with his own estimate - he was the best of the lot at Samarkand.

In the closing appendix to the revised Nuzhah, "On the Naming of the Instrument," ([19], p.312) Kāshī whimsically relates a suggestion from some of his friends, that his equatorium be called Jām-i Jamshīd,

... Jamshyd's Sev'n-ring'd Cup, where no one knows, a likening of the instrument with its seven planetary deferents to the magic divining goblet of the mythical Iranian king, discoverer of the uses of wine, and whose name Kāshī bore.

They say the Lion and the Lizard keep

The courts where Jamshyd gloried and drank deep.

As for his scientific attainments and his place in the history of science, here we can operate from much firmer ground. He was first and foremost a master computer of extraordinary ability, witness his facile use of pure sexagesimals, his invention of decimal fractions (cf. [44] and [37], p.102), his wide application of iterative algorithms, and his sure touch in so laying out a computation that he controlled the maximum error and maintained a running check at all stages.

His equatorium marked the most extensive development ever given to this class of instrument. In particular his was the only mechanical device with which a determination of the planetary

INTRODUCTION

latitudes was possible. If we retain mental reservations as to the practicality of the results, there can be no doubt of the ingenuity of the descriptive geometry involved.

He seems to have been a completely competent observer and astronomical technician, neither ahead of nor behind his times. The same statement can be made of his work in planetary theory. He accepted unreservedly the notion, not contained in the *Almagest*, that the moon, inner planets, sun, and other planets move in contiguous bands about the fixed earth, and that hence it was possible to compute in terrestrial units the mean distance of, say, Saturn from the earth. His contemporaries were therefore overgenerous in calling him "the second Ptolemy" ([33], vol. iv, p. 21), but the next generation was equally sanguine in calling a mathematician of their own time "the second Ghiyāth al-Dīn Jamshīd" ([53], p. 60).

The History of the Text and Its Versions

The Persian manuscript published in this volume is an apparently unique copy of a tract composed by some individual now unknown, between the years 1481 and 1512, and probably in Constantinople. This time spans the reign of the Ottoman Sultan Bayazid II, to whom the book is dedicated. Constantinople is mentioned in the text as this ruler's capital, and its longitude is taken as base for the planetary mean motion tables.

If the author is unknown, his prime source is not. He specifically states that the astronomical instruments he describes were invented by Jamshīd (al-Kāshī), and his work can be characterized as largely a translation into Persian of selected parts from Kāshī's own Arabic description of the same two instruments.

The latter book is called Nuzhat al-Hadā'iq (A Fruit-

Garden Stroll) and is extant in two versions. The first was written in Kāshān and completed on 10 February, 1416. The only copy known to have survived is Number 210 in [48], a microfilm of which has been made available by the officials of the India Office. The copy is modern, having been completed on 2 December, 1863. It is written in an easily legible nasta'liq hand, but very carelessly, and all the figures are missing. This Kāshān version we refer to as NK in the sequel.

In June, 1426, just three years before he died, Kāshī completed a rescension of the Nuzhah. This was after he had moved to Samarqand to work at Ulugh Beg's observatory there. Following the colophon of the original material, which was changed only in minor details, he added a set of ten appendices. These describe additional techniques for utilizing the instruments, and improvements or changes in the construction of their parts. It will be shown in the commentary (Section 42) to our text that the author made use of the Samarqand rescension, which we will abbreviate as NS. No manuscript copy is known to exist, but in 1889 it was printed in the Tehran lithograph edition of several of Kāshī's works. The example in the translator's possession is bound and paginated (pp.250-313) with the Miftāḥ al-Hisāb. It is written in a fair naskh hand, very carefully, and with text corrections in the margin. The space on page 261 for the main figure, however, has been left blank.

A table of contents of NS and NK follows, combined with a concordance of corresponding sections in our text.

I N T R O D U C T I O N

Table of Contents of the Nuzhat al-Hadā'iq With a Concordance of the Kāshān (NK), Samarqand (NS, Tehran lithograph), and Persian Versions

	NK	NS	Persian Anonymous	
	page	page	treatise and chapter	folio
<u>Chapter I.</u> ON THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INSTRUMENT	3	250	I	5v
Construction of the Plate and Ring	4	250	I,1	5v
Laying Out the Deferents, etc.	4	251	I,2	7r
Laying Out the Latitude Marks, Sectors, etc.	8	252	I,3	8v
Construction of the Alidade and Ruler	10	253	I,4	11v
The "Tables" on the Alidade	13	254	-	-
The Difference Marks	15	255	I,4	12r
The Eclipse Marks	19	256	I,4	12v
On Laying Out the Mean Motion Table	22	258	I,5	13r
Table of Mean Motions	-	259	I,5	14v
Another Type, requiring no rotation of the plate inside the ring	24	260	-	-
Another Type, with movable ring, as before, the "parallel deferent type"	27	261	-	-
Another Type, also with movable ring, the "united deferent type"	30	263	-	-
Another, the "united apogee type"	33	263	-	-
Enumeration of type combinations	37	265	-	-
<u>Chapter II.</u> ON THE OPERATION OF THE INSTRUMENT	42	267	II	18r
Section 1. On the Extraction of Mean Positions	42	267	II,2	18r

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

	NK	NS	Persian Anonymous	
	page	page	treatise and chapter	folio
Numerical Example	43	268	-	-
Section 2. On the Arrangement of the Instrument	46	269	II,1	18r
Section 3. On the Determination of the Sun's True Longitude, Equation and Distance	47	270	II,3	19v
Section 4. On the Determination of the True Longitudes of the Other Planets	48	270	II,4 II,5	20r 21r
Section 5. On the Determination of Equations	57	274	II,6	21v
Section 6. On the Determination of the Distances of Planets from the Earth	58	274	II,8	26v
Section 7. On the Determination of Retrogradations and Forward Motions	60	275	II,9	28r
Section 8. On the Knowledge of (the Planetary) Sectors	64	276	II,10	30r
Section 9. On the Determination of Planetary Latitudes	66	277	-	-
Section 10. On the Determination of the Lunar Third Equa- tion (i.e., the correc- tion due to the moon's orbit being inclined with respect to the ecliptic) and its (the moon's) True Longitude in the Parecliptic	72	280	-	-
Section 11. On the Determination of Lunar Eclipses	73	280	II,11	31r
Section 12. On the Determination of Solar Eclipses	76	281	II,12	33r
Section 13. On the Determination of the Mean of Transfer by Means of the Sun's True Longitude	77	282	II,13	34v

I N T R O D U C T I O N

	NK	NS	Persian Anonymous	
	page	page	treatise and chapter	folio
Section 14. On the Determination of True Altitude from the Apparent, and Vice Versa, and Parallax in the Altitude Circle	78	283	II,14	35r
Section 15. On the Determination of the Excess of Revo- lution by Means of the Altitude, and Mention of the Rest of What Can be Determined with this Instrument	80	283	-	-
<u>Conclusion.</u> ON THE MAKING OF THE "PLATE OF CONJUNCTIONS", AND AN EXPLANATION OF THE OPERATION(S PER- FORMED) WITH IT	83	285	I,Concl. 15r II,Concl. 37r	
Colophon	91	288	-	-
Appendix 1. On Using an Oval Deferent for the Moon	-	289	-	-
Appendix 2. On Laying Out Oval Lunar and Mercury Deferents	-	289	-	-
Appendix 3. On the Planetary Latitudes	-	291	I,3 II,7	22r
Appendix 4. On How to Fix the One Ruler on the End of the Other	-	295	-	-
Illustration of Parallel Rulers	-	298	-	-
Appendix 5. On the Determination of Mean Positions without Computation	-	298	-	-
Appendix 6. On an Improved Type, Better than those Already Des- cribed	-	306	-	-
Appendix 7. Directions in Case the Plate is Large	-	307	-	-
Appendix 8. On the Determination of the Equation of Time	-	311	II,15	36r

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

	NK	NS	Persian Anonymous	
	page	page	treatise and chapter	folio
Appendix 9. On the Explanation of the Operation as Men- tioned in Appendices 6 and 7	-	311	-	-
Appendix 10. Relating the Naming of the Instrument	-	312	-	-
Colophon of the Supplement	-	313	-	-

T E X T
and
T R A N S L A T I O N

The numbers along the left edge of each page of the translation identify corresponding lines of the text facsimile on the opposite page. Restorations to the text are indicated by the usual square brackets; in general, words enclosed in parentheses have no equivalents in the text, but have been added to clarify the meaning of the relevant passage.

Marginal additions to the text are of two kinds, scribal omissions from our copy, and explanatory notes. The former were written in, perhaps at the time the copy was made, presumably by checking it against another copy. These have been inserted into the body of the translation, set off by asterisks at the beginning and end of the insertion. The marginal notes proper, however, have been translated as such and appear in the margins of the translation.

رساله في العلم باسناد آل نبيكم

A Short Work on the Operation
of the Easiest Instrument
Having to Do with the Planets *

* This title, in Arabic and written in a hand different from that of the rest of the manuscript, need not be regarded as the original title of the work.



شکر و سپاس بی قیاس و لایق حضرت
عزت انبی باشد که اطباء و سوا و پند و
عبر و نواب و در هر عصر و در هر
سیادت نواب و مضع گردانید چسبی که
منقضای کماله اش حد و دشت گوناخت سنی
مرتبط با وضع علوی ساخت و قادی که بدست
قدرت و تقدیر چندین اشخاص منیر را در
قالب تصویر آورد و ما لاله الحلق و الامرفتبارک
ایمده حسن الخالقین و و صلوات صلوات و
تحف تحیات بر قطب فلک رسالت و مدد

f.2v

- TO THE PRAISE OF GOD
- 1
 - 2 Thanks and [praise]¹ and incomparable glory
is the due of the
 - 3 Power,[the Creator]² who has inlaid the layers
of the heavens with
 - 4 glistening pearls, with shooting [stars]³, and
glittering jewels,
 - 5 the planets and the fixed (stars). The Sage
who,
 - 6 impelled by His complete [wisdom]⁴, wrought
the bringing into existence of the inferior
(planets)
 - 7 together with the situations of the superior
(planets); the (Al)mighty, who by the hand of
 - 8 power and destiny moulded how many shining
bodies.
 - 9 "Verily his are the creation and the command;
blessed be
 - 10 God, the best of Creators"⁵, and benediction
and praises and
 - 11 the gift of salutation upon the Pole of the
Heaven of Prophecy and the Circlet of the

1. Wormeaten, read سپاس

2. " , " صانع

3. " , " بکراکب

4. " , " حکمت

5. Qur'ān, 7:52 (ed. of Flügel).

آسمان جملات محمد مصطفی و برآل و اعیان
که سوخته اند و بر آتش افتاده اند و بعد
پوشیده مانده که شریفترین نوعی از انواع است
علم نجوم است که غرض از آن را اکتفا، آن شرف
اطلاع بر یکیات حرکات کوکب در طول و عرض
و کیفیات اوضاع ایشان و مقامات هر یک
در روج و نطافات و معرفت و قات صلوات
و سمت قبله و سایر بلا و ابعاد اجرام هر یک
از کوکب از زمین و مساحت میان بلا و حاصل
میشود و حصول جمله این مقاصد پیسر که از راجع
و معرفت آن موقوفست بحساب از نظری و
تصنیف و جمع و تصنیف و ضرب و قسمت و
اعمال بعضی از تقذیمات و معنویت آن ظاهر

TRANSLATION

f.3r

- 1 Sky of Glory, Muhammad the Chosen (One) and
upon his descendants and his companions,
- 2 who are the beneficent (planets) in the sky
of leadership and the sphere of the stars of
imitation. However,
- 3 let it not remain covered that the most hono-
rable branch of the branches of the science
of mathematics
- 4 is astronomy, which supplies the human soul
with the acquiring of
- 5 that honor (i.e. astronomy), knowledge of the
amount of the planetary motions in longitude
and latitude,
- 6 and the modes of their conditions, and the
stations of each one
- 7 in the zodiacal signs, and the (planetary)
sectors, and the knowledge of the times of
prayer,
- 8 and the direction of Mecca, and the other
cities, and the distances of the bodies of
each
- 9 of the planets from the earth, and the dist-
ance between cities.
- 10 But the attaining of all these objectives is
impossible except by (means of) an astron-
omical handbook (a zīj),
- 11 and the knowledge of it is dependent upon
computations: on subtraction, and
- 12 halving, and addition, and doubling, and
multiplication, and division, and
- 13 operations with various (astronomical) equa-
tions, and its difficulty is apparent

و بهادر و کوشش بود است و استاد محقق و مجرب
محقق مکتب علوم ادب و کاشف مصلحت سائل
افتخار حکما فی العالم مولانا اعظم مولانا عیاض
المذ و الدین جیشیه برده الله سبحانه و تعالی مقصود کرده
و از اطنان الماطن نام نهم و در سال دویست
صنعت و عمل آن پر داخته که بدان المصنوع
تبع با هر طریقی و اقل زمان عمل کرده پس شود
و چنان احتیاج به رب و قوت حساب
ندارد و الی زمانه مذاج احد از آحاد عسلا
با وجود آنکه یکی سمت بر اجتماع مآثر فضل و
افضال مقصود داشته اند نقاب حجاب از
پیش آن محدث بر داشته اند و از پس بر
کجای عالم روزگار و در این مفسر و مفسر

f.3v

- 1 and known and clear and manifest, and so the
- meticulous master, the investigator, the
- 2 scrutinizing author, the completer of the
- primary sciences and the solver of difficult
- questions,
- 3 the pride of the savants of the world, our
- most mighty master, our master Ghiyāth
- 4 al-Millāh w'al-Dīn (the Refuge of the Congre-
- gation and of the Faith) Jamshīd, may God
- cool his resting-place, invented an instrument
- 5 and called it the Plate of Heavens, and
- prepared a treatise describing its
- 6 construction and operation, such that with
- this instrument the problems commonly solved
- with a
- 7 zīl may be solved by the easiest methods and
- in the shortest time,
- 8 and it does not require much multiplication
- and division and computation.
- 9 And up to this our time, no single one of the
- scholars,
- 10 notwithstanding all the effort toward the
- carrying forward of learned and excellent
- illustrious deeds,
- 11 they were deficient. The veil-curtain from
- before
- 12 the face of that virgin maiden they did not
- raise, and from behind the curtain of
- 13 existence to the world she was not made
- manifest. But this destitute one, by grace of

اراد که بچون و بیایند دولت روز افزون
پادشاه جهان و فرمان فرمای دوران سلطان
آسمان سر بر سر شید صغیر ستم لشکر شتر منظر
ظلال اندکی ملاک حسین قدمان الماء والطین
قاصد الکهره والمشرکین بیت
آیت نمایند حق صورت امن وامان

نص کتاب ظفر مهدی آخر زمان
السلطان بن السلطان ابو الفتح سلطان مایرین
بن سلطان محمد خان خلد الله مکه و سلطانه و ابی علی
علی المملین بزه و احسانه ابن آت راسا خست
و تعویج کواکب و غرض ایشان و حضور
و کسوف عمل کرده باز بچ موافق کرده اینست
و در این عمل کرده باشد بود بحاله الوقت را و در

f.4r

- 1 the ineffable will and bounty of the daily-
increasing government of the
- 2 Ruler of the World, the Issuer of Commands of
the Ages, the Sultān
- 3 of the Heavenly Throne, the Sun of Conscience,
the Star of the Jupiter-appearing Army,
- 4 the Shadow of God on both Worlds, the Champion
on Sea and Land,
- 5 the Subduer of the Infidels and Idolaters. A
Couplet:
- 6 The symbol of (what is) supported by
Right (i.e., God), the aspect of peace
and security,
- 7 (He is) the very letter of the book of
victory, the Maḥdī and the Last of (this)
Age,
- 8 the Sultān, son of Sultān Abū al-Fath, Sultān
Bāyazīd,
- 9 son of Sultān Muḥammad Khān, may God perpe-
tuate his dominion and his kingdom, and may
- 10 his beneficence and his goodness endure upon
both worlds, (the author) constructed this
instrument,
- 11 and operated (with it to find) the true longi-
tudes of the planets, and their latitudes, and
lunar
- 12 and solar eclipses. (The results) agreed with
(those obtained by use of) a zīj.
- 13 And of whatever has been done at present (i.e.,
this work itself) having been

چند گفتند که در این مدینه و عتبات
کشت و فان و قلع فی حشر لقول فنهو غایم
الماحول و نهایت السؤل و ملتس انک چون برهنوی
و خطایب الخلع یابند بپشم سبکبار و دانه مار
نیکار و اصلاح فرمایند و بر قیاب این رساله بر
سفال لایق افتاد مقتضای اول
در صنعت طلق المناطق شش رنج باب و پنجاه
باب اول در صنعت قرص و کف
باب دوم در رسم ادوات و مراکز
و مناطق و نقطه غاذا و معدل للمیرایم
سیر و در رسم قطر استوا و نقطه عرض و خطوط
آن باب چهارم در صنعت عضاد
در سطر و تقسیم آن باب پنجم در رسم

TRANSLATION

f.4v

- 1 written on a few sheets, it is presented to
the mighty and glorious (one), the Sublime
Porte.
- 2 And if acceptance be possible it (would be)
the extreme of
- 3 that which is hoped for, the utmost of that
which is requested. It is requested that if
information of a slip
- 4 or a mistake is found (it) be corrected with
the musk-dripping pen and the reed (pen which
is) the pearl-portrayer.
- 5 And the arrangement of this disquisition came
to be worthy of two
- 6 treatises. (Contents of) THE FIRST TREATISE:
- 7 On the Construction of the Plate of Heavens,
containing five chapters and a conclusion.
- 8 Chapter One, On the Construction of the Disk
and the Ring.
- 9 Chapter Two, On the Drawing of the Apogees, and
the Centers,
- 10 and the Deferents, and the Opposite Point, and
the Equant. Chapter
- 11 Three, On the Drawing of the Equating Diameter,
and the Latitude-Point, and their Lines.

جدول اول اوساط و غیره با حاشیه
 صفت لوح انصاف و مصلحت
 در عمل با این آیت ششگانه بر بازو. باب
 اول در ترتیب آیت باب دوم در استخراج
 اوساط کوکب باب سوم در استخراج
 تقویم آفتاب و باب چهارم در استخراج
 تقویم قمر باب پنجم در استخراج
 تقویم کوکب و تحریک باب ششم در
 معرفت بعد ملات باب هفتم در
 معرفت عرض کوکب باب هشتم در
 معرفت بعد کوکب از مرکز عالم باب نهم
 در معرفت رجعت و استقامت باب دهم
 در معرفت بطاقات و حقیقت ویری باب

f.5r

- 1 The Table of Mean (Motions), and so on. Con-
 clusion, On
- 2 the Construction of the Plate of Conjunctions.
 (Contents of) THE SECOND TREATISE:
- 3 On the Operation of this Instrument, contained
 in fifteen chapters: Chapter
- 4 One, On the Arrangement of the Instrument.
 Chapter Two, On the Extraction
- 5 of the Mean (Motions) of the Planets. Chapter
 Three, On the Extraction of
- 6 the True Longitude of the Sun. Chapter Four,
 On the Extraction of
- 7 the True Longitude of the Moon. Chapter Five,
 On the Extraction of
- 8 the True Longitudes of the Planets. Chapter
 Six, On
- 9 the Determination of Equations. Chapter
 Seven, On
- 10 the Determination of Planetary Latitudes.
 Chapter Eight, On
- 11 the Determination of the Distances of the
 Planets from the Center of the Universe. Chap-
 ter Nine, On
- 12 the Determination of Retrogradations and Sta-
 tions. Chapter Ten
- 13 On the Determination of Apogee and Epicyclic
 Sectors. Chapter

پانزدهم در معرفت صوب باب دوازدهم
در معرفت کسوف باب سیزدهم در
در خط تحول باب چهاردهم در معرفت
ارثاعی حقیقی و در مری در معرفت ارتفاع در سینه
در حقیقی و اختلاف منظره از ارتفاع باب
پانزدهم در معرفت تبدیل الیام بلیالیل حالت
در عمل منوج اتصالات مقادیر اول
در صنعت آت موسوم بطق المناطق و شمل برج
باب دهم و خاتمه باب اول در صنعت قوس
و علقه چون خواستند که این آت را بسازند مقصود
صحیح الاستعداد بسازند از نحاس یا صفت
یا شکر یا خشب صلب بچوب صفت اسطرلاب
هر چند در ذکره باشد بهتر بود اقل قطره را یک

f.5v

- 1 Eleven, On the Determination of Lunar Eclipses. Chapter Twelve,
- 2 On the Determination of Solar Eclipses. Chapter Thirteen, On the Determination of
- 3 the Mean of Transfer. Chapter Fourteen, On the Determination of the
- 4 True [from]* the Apparent Altitude, and the Determination of the Apparent Altitude
- 5 from the True, and Parallax in the Altitude Circle. Chapter
- 6 Fifteen, On the Determination of the Equation of Time. Conclusion,
- 7 On the Operation of the Plate of Conjunctions.

THE FIRST TREATISE

- 8 On the Construction of the Instrument Called the Plate of Heavens, containing five
- 9 chapters and a conclusion. CHAPTER ONE. On the Construction of the Disk
- 10 and the Ring. If it is desired to make this instrument, make a disk,
- 11 truly circular, of copper, or brass,
- 12 or yellow copper, or hard wood, like the plate of an astrolabe,
- 13 the bigger the better. Its diameter should be at least one

* For , read ١٠.

دفاع بود و اگر در یک دفعه دفاع بود و جبهه باشد
عمل صحیحی آید و بر دو حلقه ترکیب کنند چون حجر
اصططلاب چنانکه صیفیه در حرکت کند و از وی
کنند و وسط حلقه با سطح صیفیه چون یک سطح مستوی
گردد بدان طریقه از محیط صیفیه زبانیه باریک
بنا کنند و در تمام مقعر حلقه حفری کنند تا آنجا
در و در آید و استوار و از ریخته و شاقول امتحان
کنند چنانکه معلوم صنایع است پس مرکز قرص
بج و این بر حلقه رسم کنند و دایره اول را بدوازند
قسمت راست کنند تا دایره پنجم نه بدوازند
شود و در مابین اول و ثانی اسامی بروج بنویسند
و توانی از جانب یسار اعتبار کنند چون خود را
بر مرکز قرص فرض کرده باشند و ثانی را بنویسند

TRANSLATION

f.6r

- 1 cubit, and if it be two or three cubits,
- 2 operating with it will be more accurate. And
mount around it a ring, like the raised ring
(around the plate) of an
- 3 astrolabe, in such fashion that the plate
move in it and not become separated,
- 4 and the surface of the ring and the surface
of the plate should form a single plane sur-
face,
- 5 and in such fashion that from the circumference
of the plate a narrow tongue
- 6 be extended. And in all the concavity of the
ring let a hollow be cut out so that the
tongue
- 7 fit into it. The flatness of this should be
tested with ruler and plumbline,
- 8 as is known to the craftsman. Then, around
the center of the disk,
- 9 draw five circles on the ring, and divide the
first circle into twelve
- 10 parts, so that the fivefold circles are divi-
ded by them,
- 11 and between the first and the second write
the names of the (zodiacal) signs,
- 12 and consider the succession from the left,
since it has itself been
- 13 assumed around the center of the disk. The
second is divided into seventy-

و دو قسم کرده عدد درجات را باینکه نه در مابین ثانی
 و ثالث رقم نهند و ثالث را بیصد و شصت بعد و
 درجات فلک البروج قسمت کنند و رابع را یکصد و
 درجات بقدر اسکان قسمت کنند و خطوط وصل
 کنند میان رابع و خامس بجهت کسور و خطوط بهر
 قسمی از اقسام حاوی تا دایره که اندرون است
 کنند و اگر خطوط اقسام خسرات بدوئی دیگر کنند
 بجهت تسهیل اعمال بهتر بود پس بر دایره خامس که
 یکصد و شصت است بر محاذات هر پستی نشینی و قیوت
 کنند چنانکه مشعبه از حلقه بگذرد و زبان قرض نیز
 بر محاذات او سوراخ شود و سه اشقاب باید که بر
 محیط این بود بسازند که بجهت یک از آن
 اشقاب که فسرورند حلقه بر قرض ثابت شود

پس شماری باریکه

TRANSLATION

f.6v

- 1 two parts, the number of five(-degree intervals
- around the circle). Between the second
- 2 and the third place numerals. And the third
- (circle), divide it into three hundred and
- sixty, the number of
- 3 the degrees of the zodiac, and the fourth into
- fractions
- 4 of degrees to the amount possible, and join
- lines
- 5 between the fourth and the fifth for the frac-
- tions, and the lines of each
- 6 of the inner parts, extend (them) to the inner-
- most circle.
- 7 If the lines of the five parts be made of
- different color(s)
- 8 for ease of operation it will be better. Then
- on the fifth circle, which
- 9 is divided into fractions, opposite each divi-
- sion, have a careful hole
- 10 so that the drill pass through the ring. And
- the tongue of the disk also
- 11 should be pierced opposite it, and all the
- holes must be along
- 12 the circumference of one circle. *Then* make
- *a very thin* peg so that whichever of those
- 13 holes it may pass through, the ring will be
- fixed on the disk,

* Marginal correction.

و این حلقه تا به مقام فلک البروج بود باب
 دوم در رسم اوجات و مراکز و مناطق و نقط
 ها و اوقات و معدل السیر بر محیط صفحه کیف است
 نقط فرض کنند و از البروج شش دانست پس ازین
 نقط بمقدار مابین اوج شش اوج هر کو که
 بر توالی البروج احذ کرده. علامات محفلند

مابین اوج آفتاب و کو اکب			
۱	۲	۳	۴
۵	۶	۷	۸
۹	۱۰	۱۱	۱۲

پس میان هر علامت و مرکز بخطی مستقیم وصل کنند
 چنانچه بعد اتمام آلت محو آن ممکن باشد و از مرکز
 صفحه بسوی اوج هر کو که غیر از شش برای شش
 سوی حقیص و و برای شش بسوی مبداء اجزاء

علاوه بر این

f.7r

- 1 and this ring shall stand in the place of the
zodiac. CHAPTER
- 2 TWO. On the Drawing of the Apogees, and Centers,
and Deferents, and the
- 3 Opposite Point, and the Equant. On the circum-
ference of the plate, however it may befall,
- 4 assume a point, and call it the sun's apogee.
Then, from this
- 5 point, to the amount between the sun's apogee
and the apogee of each planet, having taken
(it)
- 6 in (the direction of the) succession of the
signs, place marks.

7	(Angles) Between the Apogee(s) of the Sun and the Five Planets				
8	\cap	♄	♅	♆	♇
9	5°10;28°	2°29;16°	1°16;5°	11°19;15°	4°2;40°

- 10 Then, between each mark and the center, join
a straight line
- 11 such that, after the completion of the instru-
ment, erasure be possible. And from the center
of
- 12 the plate, in the direction of the apogee of
each planet except for the sun, and for the
sun
- 13 in the direction of its perigee, and for the
moon in the direction of the beginning of divi-
sions,

بمقدار مابین المکرر کنی بگیرند در آن علامت نهند که
 اثر آن باقی ماند و آن علامت مرکز حامل آن
 که یک بود بدین تفصیل که مذکور می شود و این

اعداد ماکز حامل آنکه بر خط ان نصف قطر الصلح سون					
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶

بمقدار است که نصف قطر صیفه مشقت درجه باشد
 پس هر یکی از این علامات المکرر ساخته بر آی پیک
 از قمر و حسل و شتری و مریخ و زهره سن باین
 بعد و این رسم کنند و این دو ایر مناطق حواملین

انصاف اقطار حوامل علی ان نصف قطر الصلح سون					
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶

TRANSLATION

f.7v

- 1 to the amount between the two centers, lay (it)
off, and place a mark on it that
- 2 its trace shall remain. And that mark shall be
the deferent center of that
- 3 planet, according to the particulars recorded
herewith. And these

4 Distances of the deferent centers of the planets
(in units) such that half the plate diameter is
sixty.

5	☉	☾	♂	♂	♂	♀	♀
6	2;6,9	10;19	2;58	2;32	4;33	1;2	4;52

- 7 (units) are of such an amount that half the plate
diameter shall be sixty degrees.

- 8 Then, each one of these marks having been made
a center, for each one
- 9 of the moon, and Saturn, and Jupiter, and Mars,
and Venus, with this distance (i.e., radius)
draw a circle,
- 10 and these circles are the deferent heavens of
these

11 Halves of the deferent diameters (in units) such
that half the plate diameter is sixty.

12	☾	♂	♂	♂	♀
13	49;41	52;2	55;28	45;27	58;58

گوایست و اینجا برسم منطقه خارج شمس
 نیست چه محیط صغیر را منطقه شمس فرض کند مستطاب
 و مرکز مرسوم را مرکز مستعار شمس نامند و آن
 مرکز که برای عطارد رسم کرده اند مرکز مدیر عطارد
 باشد پس از مرکز مدیر خطی خارج کنند مقابل
 خط اولی بر قیامه و ازین مرکز ببرد و جانب همین
 دنیا را خط او بنویسد مقدار 90° و علامت نماید
 و هر یک ازین علامتین را مرکز ساخت بعد
 تا که دو قوس رسم کند تا شکلی ایلیلی حاصل
 شود که نصف قطر طول از ناحیه نصف قطر
 اقصرش موافق بود و این مدار مرکز مدیر عطارد
 بود و مدار منطقه عطارد نامیم و باید که هر یک
 از منطقه کوایست را بلونی دیگر کشند تا در وقت عمل

f.8r

- 1 planets, and there is no need for drawing the
eccentric heaven of the sun,
- 2 since the circumference of the plate is ficti-
ciously assumed (to be) the heaven of the sun,
- 3 and the marked center (of the plate) is called
the fictitious (deferent) center of the sun.
And that
- 4 center which has been drawn for Mercury, let
it be Mercury's turning center.
- 5 Then, from the turning center extend a line
intersecting
- 6 the line of apsides perpendicularly, and from
this center to both sides, right
- 7 and left of the line of apsides, to an amount
5;8, make two marks,
- 8 and, having made each one of these two marks
a center, with distance (i.e., radius)
- 9 51;23 draw two arcs so that an elliptical-
shaped figure results,
- 10 of which half its larger diameter is 51;8 and
half its
- 11 shorter diameter is 46;15, and this is the
orbit of Mercury's epicycle center,
- 12 and we call (it) Mercury's deferent. And each
- 13 of the planet's deferents must be drawn in a
different color, so that at the time of opera-
tion

تنبه کرد و پس از هر که منطقه هر یک از علوی و زیر
بجای افغان و در قسم از هر که صیفی بجانب
بهدا اجزای بی نظرف میزان بقدر بعد هر که آن
کو که از هر که صیفی بگیرند و بران علامت
که اتفاق باقی نماند و در عطار در برستف مین هر که
صیفی و هر که ندر علامت کند و این علامت
در غیر هر که معدل اسر و در قمر نقطه محاذی خواهند
باب سیوم در رسم قسط استوار و نقطه
و خطوط عرض و مبادی خطافات و صورت صیفی
و منطلق و علامت و دایره و خطوط بر صیفی قطری
برسم کنیم که بهدا اجزای محیط کند و از انقطه
استوانا نیم پس بر قسط استوار بقرب اول
میزان هشت علامت کنیم چنانکه اثر علامت

f.8v

- 1 no mistake be made. Then, from the deferent
 center of each of the superior (planets), and
 Venus
- 2 on the side of its apogee, and for the moon from
 the center of the plate on the opposite side
 from
- 3 the beginning of divisions, i.e. on the side
 of Libra, to the amount of the distance of the
 center of that
- 4 planet from the plate center, lay (this dist-
 ance) off, and put a mark on it
- 5 that its trace remain. And for Mercury, on the
 half(-distance) between the center of
- 6 the plate and the turning center make a mark,
 and these marks,
- 7 except for the moon, are the equant centers,
 and for the moon it is called the opposite
 point.
- 8 CHAPTER THREE. On drawing the Equating Dia-
 meter, and the Latitude Point(s),
- 9 and the Latitude Lines, and the Beginning of
 the Sectors, and the Picture of the Plate,
- 10 and the Deferents, and Marks, and Circles,
 and Lines. On the plate draw a diameter
- 11 which passes through the beginning of the divi-
 sions and the circumference, and we call it
 the equating diameter.
- 12 Then, on the equating diameter, near the first
 (point) of
- 13 Libra, we make eight marks such that the traces
 of the marks

باقی ماند و برای رسل و دوبرای شتری و
 و دوبرای مرغی که برای رهن و یکی برای عطار
 و بعد هر علامتی از مرکز صفحه بدین تفصیل است

ایضا و مبط عرض الکرکب الحخته علی ان نصف قطر البصیفة									
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۱۰
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۱۰
۱	۲	۳	۴	۵	۶	۷	۸	۹	۱۰

و این علامات را نقطه عرض خوانیم و اگر برای
 هر یک از طوایف نیز بعلامات واحد اکتفا کنند
 در منصف بعدین در مقصود خلل ندارند پس
 بر هر نصف نصف این رسم کنیم بر ابعاد جانبین قطر
 استوار اگر بر جانب بروج جنوبی بود به سمت
 نصف قطر او مساوی حب نه در چه باشد بر مقعر
 اجزاء حجب بعد از آن سلطان را بر سر و

این علامت را در هر یک از
 این علامات را در هر یک از
 این علامات را در هر یک از
 این علامات را در هر یک از

TRANSLATION

f.9r

- 1 remain, two for Saturn, and two for Jupiter,
- 2 and two for Mars, one for Venus, and one for Mercury.
- 3 And the distance of each mark from the center of the plate is detailed herewith:

4	Distances of the latitude line(s) of the five planets (in units) such that half the plate diameter is sixty							
5	η		λ		σ		ϕ	ψ
6	53;55	50;1	57;46	53;9	50;0	40;54	58;58	46;0

- 7 and these marks we call latitude point(s), and if, for
- 8 each of the superior (planets) also one is content with
- 9 halving (the sum of) the two distances the objective will not be marred. Then,
- 10 with the center of the plate (as center) draw a semicircle on one side of the equating diameter,
- 11 if on the side of the southern signs (it is) better, such that
- 12 half its diameter be equal to the sine of nine degrees of the concavity
- 13 of the ring. After that, place a ruler upon pairs of

In the case of the inferior (planets) the mark(s) have been made single, because they do not have two extremes, for the epicycle center of Venus is always north and of Mercury always south.

This is the distance of the planet's epicycle center from the center of the universe in northern and southern directions.

نصف دایره

جمله متساوی بعد از قطر استوار، پسند
خط می کشند در داخل نصف دایره خطوط متوازی
که از بی قطرها استوار بود و متساوی شود و لا محاله این
بین خطوط بنسب خوب قسمی خواهد بود از یکی
تا به پس بر محیط نصف دایره اعداد خطوط را استوار
از چاهین بنویسد و همچنین خطوط و فاصل بین
همه ممکن رسم کند و این خطوط را خطوط عرض نامیم
و همچنین بر هر کره صیغه نصف دایره رسم کنند
که ماکس خطی در حینه از خطوط عرض و این را
دایره عرض قمر خوانیم و اگر صیغه بزرگ باشد
رسم خطوط بدقیقه یا دقیقه یا دقیقه کردن کرد
دو دایره دیگر رسم کنند یکی ماکس خط و دقیقه
و دایره عرض اول از سنخ خواهد بود و دیگر

TRANSLATION

f.9v

- 1 points equidistant from the equating diameter,
- 2 and draw line(s) inside the semicircle *(up)
- 3 to the semicircle* in parallel lines
- 4 which are parallel to the equating diameter
- 5 (and such that the inside) be filled. And
- 6 undoubtedly the distances
- 7 between the lines will be in the ratio of the
- 8 sines of the parts from one
- 9 to nine. Then on the circumference of the
- 10 semi-circle, write the numbers of the succes-
- 11 sive lines
- 12 from both sides, and in the same fashion draw
- 13 also the lines of the minutes
- 14 (to the amount) possible, and these lines we
- 15 call latitude lines.
- 16 And in the same manner, draw a semicircle about
- 17 the center of the plate
- 18 which shall be tangent to the five-degree line
- 19 of the latitude lines.
- 20 We call this the moon's latitude circle. And
- 21 if the plate is large
- 22 the lines may have been drawn minute-by-minute
- 23 or (every) two minutes.
- 24 Draw two more circles, one tangent to the ten-
- 25 minute line,
- 26 and we call it the circle of Venus' first
- 27 latitude; and the other

*Marginal addition.

ماس خط چهل و پنج و بیست و این را
 دایره عرض عطار و نایم پس بر خط
 هر که بکشد چنانچه علامت کند و
 بر اوج و حقیض و در بر و لب و نقاط
 ثانی و رابع بحسب البعد بخت شهرت
 و معتد از بعد این دو جداول از جدول اول
 زیج اخذ کند و ما جدولی آوردیم که بهر
 نقاط بحسب البعد و الحسره که همسین
 کدام که خواهم شد از آن جدول
 بردارند و آن جدول
 اینست

TRANSLATION

f.10r

- 1 tangent to the forty-five minute line, and we
 call it*
- 2 the latitude circle of Mercury. Then, on the
 deferent of
- 3 each planet make four marks, two
- 4 on the apogee and perigee, and two on the two
 beginnings of the second and fourth sectors
- 5 reckoned according to distance, as is known
 (for each particular planet).
- 6 And the amount of the distance of these two
 beginnings
- 7 is taken from a table of the (Khāqānī) Zīj, and
 we have brought (out) a table such that
- 8 the sectors, computed according to distance and
 motion, any
- 9 which is wanted, take it from that table,
- 10 and that table
- 11 is this:

*The word *lā* is repeated in the text.

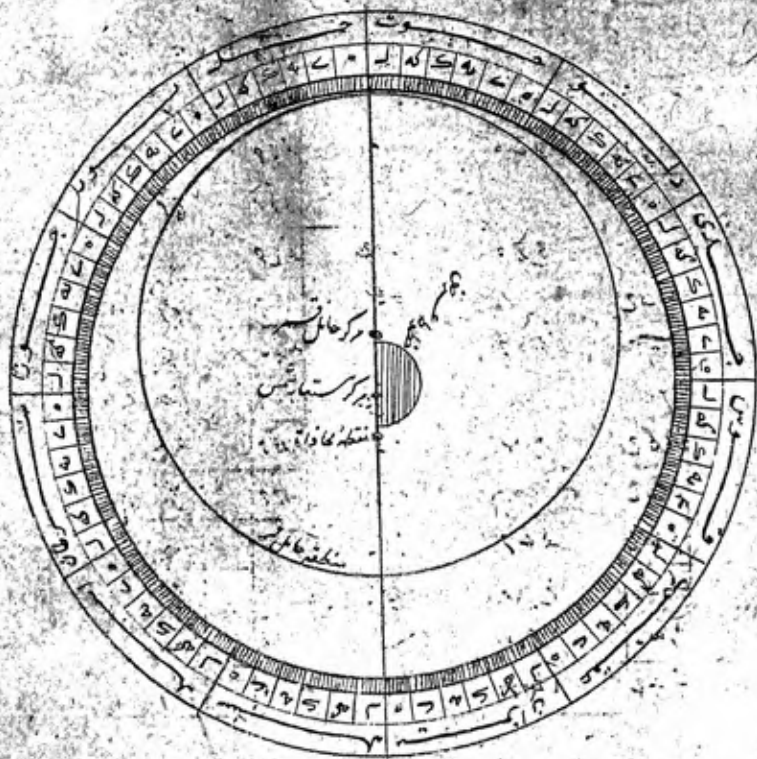
جدول بیادی نظامات

[illegible]

f.10v

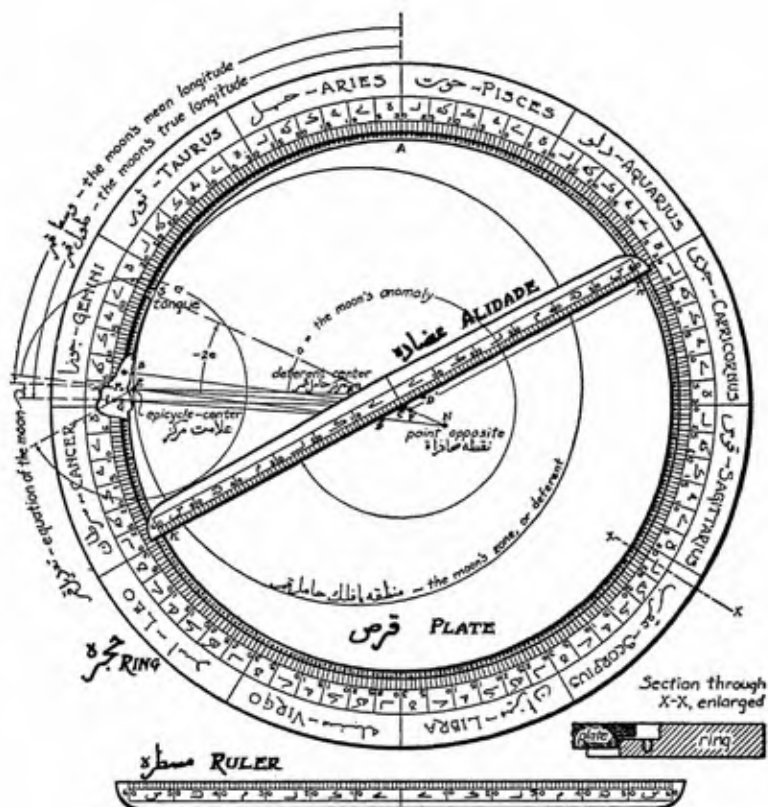
TABLE OF THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SECTORS									
The Planets		Apogee Sectors, (according) to the Center				Epicycle Sectors (according) to the Adjusted Anomaly			
According to Distance		First	Second	Third	Fourth	First	Second	Third	Fourth
	☉	0° 0; 0°	3° 1; 0°	6° 0; 0°	8° 29; 0°	0° 0; 0°			
	☿		2 24; 2		9 5; 58		3° 2; 31°		[8]° 27; 2[9]°
	♂		3 4; 54		8 25; 6		3 2; 56		8 27; 4
	♂		3 3; 26		8 26; 34		3 [5]; 3[8]		8 24; 22
	♂		3 8; 30		8 21; 30		4 17; 48		7 12; 12
	♀		3 1; 1		8 29; 59		3 20; 43		8 9; [17]
	♀		2 7; 44		9 22; 16		3 9; [2] 3		[8] 20; 37
According to Motion	☉		3 2; 1		8 28; 59				
	☿		3 24; 0		8 6; 0		3 5; 3		8 24; 57
	♂		3 3; 16		8 26; 44		3 5; 53		8 27; 7
	♂		3 2; 37		8 27; 23		3 10; 34		8 19; 26
	♂		3 5; 42		8 24; 18		4 7; 38		7 22; 22
	♀		3 1; [0]		8 29; 0		4 15; 0		7 15; 0
	♀		3 3; 2		8 26; 58		3 19; 1		8 10; 59

صورت نجوم و سیاق و علامات و دایره
و خطوط اینست



f.11r

The Picture of the Ring and Plate and
Deferents and Marks and Lines is this:



(Figure 1)

باب چهارم در صنعت عضاده و
سطره دو سطره بسیارند از نخاس یا صفت
یا خشت یکی مثل عضاده اصطراب که او را
حرف واحد باشد و باید که طول از زیاد باشد
از قطر صغری و اقصر از قطر عذب حشر
و حرف او را از مرکز تا مقدار نصف قطر
صغری از جانبین بشت قسم کند مثل عضاده
اصطراب محب و اعداد اجزاء او را از هر دو
جانب مرکز طردا و عکس بنویسند و باید که
موضع هر دو قطب در نصف دائرة باشد
و در تقویر آن زائده بقدر امکان گواهند تا مرکز
بیماری در شیب او مختفی نماند و دیگر نیز
بهمان مقدار واجبست لکن بجای زائده طردا

f.11v

- 1 CHAPTER FOUR. On the Construction of the Ali-
- 2 dade and
- 3 Ruler. Make two rulers, of copper, or brass,
- 4 or wood, one like the alidade of an astrolabe,
- 5 such that (it) shall be
- 6 one (straight-)edge, and its length must be
- 7 in excess
- 8 of the diameter of the plate and shorter than
- 9 the convex diameter (i.e., outer diameter) of
- 10 the ring.
- 11 And its edge, from the center to the amount of
- 12 half the diameter of the
- 13 plate, from both sides divide it into sixty
- 14 parts, like the alidade of a
- 15 sine astrolabe, and the numbers of its divi-
- 16 sions are written proceeding in opposite
- 17 directions from the center, and the
- 18 place where the pivot passes (through it) must
- 19 be (on a projecting) semicircle,
- 20 and in making that (semicircular) projection
- 21 as small as possible, care should be exercised
- 22 that the center
- 23 not be hidden in its slope. And the other
- 24 (ruler) is also
- 25 (made) the same size, and with the same divi-
- 26 sions, but in place of the projection on the

اول در وجهی مستدیر کنند که را اندر اول
 عند الجاذبه در و در آید و مسدود مسطره چون
 مسطره واحد کرده و اعداد مسطره و ثانیه
 را از یک طرف تا طرف دیگر بنویسند
 طر و او عکس و با مسطره اول را عباد
 و مسطره ثانیه را مسطره در اینم پس
 بر احد جانبین عضاد و ششش علامت کنند
 بجهت که اکبر کشته غیر شش و انرا از قلم
 اختلاف نامیم و ابعاد علامات از مرکز صفی
 برای هر که بکشد بدین فصل است

این جدول از
 جدول اول
 جدول دوم
 جدول سوم
 جدول چهارم
 جدول پنجم
 جدول ششم
 جدول هفتم
 جدول هشتم
 جدول نهم
 جدول دهم
 جدول یازدهم
 جدول بیستم

ابعاد از قلم اختلاف علامت ان نصف قطر الصغیر

نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف
نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف	نصف

TRANSLATION

f.12r

- 1 first ruler make a (semi)circular depression
- in it such that the projection on the first,
- 2 when needed, may enter it, and both rulers
- become
- 3 as one ruler. And the numbers of the second
- ruler
- 4 are to be written from one side to the other,
- 5 outward and in opposite directions. And we
- call the first ruler the alidade,
- 6 and the second ruler we call the ruler. Then,
- 7 on one of the two sides of the alidade make
- six marks
- 8 for the six planets other than the sun, and
- we call these the
- 9 difference marks, and the distances of the
- marks from the center of the plate
- 10 for each planet are detailed herewith:

11	Distances of the difference marks in 60ths of half the plate diameter:					
12	☾	♄	♅	♆	♁	♂
13	5;17	5;38	10;38	30;32	42;25	18;13

*This distance is to the
amount of half the epicycle
diameter of these planets.*

و اگر در صفحه بر مرکب صیف کشش در آن دهیم گشت
باین پس برای اختلاف زد و بود و آن دو و ایر
و ایر و ایر اختلاف نامند و باز از آن کسب و سطره
نمایند یعنی از محد در اس او نه از مبداء اجزا
و بعد از آنست و وجه جز از اجزاء سطره
و بر یک کار گرفته جفت بلع بر حرف علامت می کنند
و از آن علامت ضوف نامند و بعد از پستی و
سجده علامتی دیگر کنند و از آن علامت کسوف
نمایند و بعد از پست و نه علامتی دیگر
کنند بجفت مکت ضوف و بر وجه سطره
و نه نهایت جز تا شص و عشرین تا نهایت جز تا نایست
و شص و طول بد و از ده قسمت کنند بجفت و نه قسمت
اصابع منحنه و از مبداء اجزاء سطره از طرف

TRANSLATION

f.12v

- 1 And if on the plate, around the plate center,
six circles are drawn
- 2 with these distances (as radii) for difference(s),
it is permissible, and those circles
- 3 are called difference circles. And from one
of the two heads of the second ruler,
- 4 i.e., from beyond its head, not from the begin-
ning of divisions,
- 5 to a distance of sixty-three divisions of the
divisions of the ruler,
- 6 laid off with a compass, wherever it reaches,
on its edge make a mark,
- 7 and that is called the lunar eclipse mark. And
at a distance of thirty-three
- 8 divisions make another mark, and it is called
the solar eclipse mark.
- 9 And at a distance of twenty-nine make another
mark
- 10 for the duration (or first totality) of the
lunar eclipse, and on the face of the ruler,
- 11 between the limits of the twenty-ninth divi-
sion to the sixty-third division,
- 12 divide in length (the segment thus determined)
in twelve (parts) for the determination of
- 13 lunar eclipse digits. And from the beginning
of the divisions of the ruler, on the other
side,

چگونگی تانیهات جزئیات و کشین بدو از در
 قسمت کنند جهت معرفت اصابع بکشد
 اعداد اصابع در هر دو و از جهت مرکز بنویسند
 وسط در تن برابر سلسله و قیقه مرتبه که در
 که طول سلسله قریب باشد بطول نصف قطر
 و نصب بنشین در عضاده در اخذ ارتفاع یکای
 و اگر بجای سطره ریمانی باریک استعمال
 کنند مطلوب حاصل گردد بآب بنشین
 در رسم جدول اول اوساط و غیره با هر قطر صغیر
 جدولی رسم کنند که در عرض بیازده قسمت
 کرده باشد یکی از جهت صف اعداد و پنج جهت
 اوساط بنزین و علویه و پنج باقی جهت اوج
 ششم و خاصه قسم وسط جوزه هر دو

TRANSLATION

f.13r

- 1 to the end of the thirty-third division divide
(it) into
- 2 twelve parts for the knowledge of the solar
eclipse digits, and write
- 3 the numbers of the digits of both, (beginning)
from the center.
- 4 And let the two rulers be joined with a thin
chain
- 5 such that the length of the chain be nearly
the length of half the diameter.
- 6 And the placing of two sights on the alidade
may be used for taking the altitude.
- 7 And if, in place of the ruler, a thin string
is used,
- 8 the desired result may be attained. CHAPTER
FIVE
- 9 On Drawing the Tables of Mean (Motions), etc.
On the back of the plate
- 10 draw a table whose width is divided into ele-
ven parts,
- 11 one for the column of numbers, and five for
the mean (motions) of the sun and moon and
superior planets, and the remaining five for
the
- 12 solar apogee, and the lunar anomaly, and the
mean of the lunar nodes, and

وخاصه مر کبیر طبلین و در طول به پیچا و دست
قسم نهم به جهت بطور القاب و در برای
حکمت اوساط در ده سال متوالی از سنین ماضیه
پیزد جزی و نوزده و جنب سنین غشرات و آیت
و الف و سیزده برای شهور اثنی عشر
و جنبه و دوازده برای حاد و عشرات و یکی برای
ساعت و جزی و یکی دیگر رسم کند در عشر ص منقسم
چهار قسم یک صف به جهت اسماء کواکب
جنبه مختص یکی برای مبداء خذ و مسمات
و جنبه و دیگری منتهای حد و مسمات
و جنبه و یکی دیگر برای تفاضل منتهای
و ما این جدول را در باب نهم در معرفت
و جنبه و استقامت او ردیم و اگر این

TRANSLATION

f.13v

- 1 the compound anomaly of the two inferior planets;
and in length (it) is divided into fifty-eight
- 2 parts: three for the column headings, and ten
for
- 3 the motion of the mean (planets) in ten succes-
sive years of incomplete Yazdigerd years,
- 4 and nineteen on account of the tens and hundreds
and a
- 5 thousand, and thirteen for the twelve months
and
- 6 five (intercalary days), and twelve for single
(days) and tens of days, and one for the
- 7 hour. And lay out another table (to be) divided
- 8 into four parts, one row for the names of the
- 9 five planets, and one for the beginning of the
limits of the
- 10 retrograde stations, and another (for the)
ends of the boundaries of the
- 11 retrograde stations, and one more for the
differences between the two of them.
- 12 And we have brought forth this table in the
ninth chapter, on the determination of
- 13 retrogradations and stations, and if this

جدول را نمیکنند و بر اجزاء حجه برای
مبادی جدول و استقامت و نهایت آن علامت
نهند بجز و یک جدول دیگر وضع کنند
بجست اختلاف ساعات و این جمیع
حقیقی و مرئی بود و اختلاف نظر و
در عرض عند الاجتماع المرفوع بعضی
وسط اقلیم و ما این جدولها را از رنج خاتما
عمل کرده نوشتیم و اگر این جدولها را در آن
وضع کنند و عند الاحتیاج اینها را
بردارند جایز است و جدول اختلاف ساعات
چون در معرفت کسوف بکاری آید و در باب
معرفت کسوف نوشتیم و صورت جدول
اوسط اینست و الله اعلم

f.14r

- 1 table is not drawn, and on the divisions of
the ring marks are put for
- 2 the beginning of the boundaries of the sta-
tions and their ends,
- 3 (it will be) better. And place another table
- 4 for the difference of the hours, and that will
be between the
- 5 true and apparent conjunction, and the lunar
parallax
- 6 in latitude according to the apparent conjunc-
tion at the
- 7 mean latitude(s) of the climates. And we,
having made (?) these tables in the Khāqānī
Zīj,
- 8 wrote them (from it). But if these tables are
not
- 9 put on the instrument, and, when necessary,
are taken from this treatise,
- 10 it is permissible. And the table of difference
of the hours,
- 11 since it was being used in the science of
solar eclipses, we wrote it in the chapter
(on)
- 12 the science of solar eclipses. And the picture
of the table of
- 13 mean motions is this, but God knows better.

[illegible]

TRANSLATION

f.14v

(A Table of Mean Positions
and Mean Motions)

Years, months, days, & hours	☉		☿			♂		♂		♀	
	Mean	Apogee	Mean	Anomaly	♂	Mean	Mean	Mean	Compound Anomaly	Compound Anomaly	Compound Anomaly
651	8° 4, 22'	3° 1, 59'	6° 1, 49'	3° 28, 46'	9° 24, 4'	6° 12, 7'	4° 28, 9'	6° 4, 18'	3° 29, 57'	7° 8, 4'	
652	4, 7	3 2, 0	10 11, 12	6 27, 29	10 13, 24	6 24, 50	5 24, 29	0 15, 25	11 14, 44	9 1, 48	
653	3, 53	1	2 20, 35	9 26, 12	11 2, 43	7 6, 13, 5	6 24, 50	26, 40	6 29, 32	10 25, 32	
654	3, 39	2	6 29, 58	0 24, 50	11 22, 3	7 8, 43, 8	7 25, 10	1 8, 0	2 14, 49	0 19, 16	
655	3, 24	3	11 9, 20	3 23, 38	0 11, 23	8 1, 2	8 12, 31	7 19, 17	9 29, 6	2 13, 0	
656	3, 10	3	3 10, 44	6 22, 22	1 0, 43	8 13, 16	9 25, 51	2 0, 34	5 13, 54	4 6, 44	
657	2, 56	4	7 28, 7	9 21, 5	1 20, 2	8 26, 29	10 26, 11	8 11, 51	0 28, 41	6 0, 28	
658	2, 41	5	0 7, 30	0 19, 49	2 9, 22	9 7, 43	11 26, 33	2 23, 8	8 13, 29	7 24, 12	
659	2, 27	6	4 16, 53	3 18, 3	2 28, 42	9 19, 57	0 26, 53	9 4, 25	3 28, 16	9 17, 55	
660	2, 13	3 2, 6	8 26, 16	6 17, 14	3 18, 1	10 2, 10	1 27, 14	3 15, 43	11 13, 4	11 11, 39	
10	11 27, 37	0 0, 9	7 3, 51	5 17, 11	6 13, 17	4 2, 17	10 3, 26	3 22, 52	2 27, 54	5 27, 19	
20	25, 0	17 2, 7, 42	11 4, 23	0 26, 28	6 4, 38	8 6, 32	7 15, 44	5 25, 49	11 24, 30		
30	22, 50	26 9 11, 33	4 21, 34	7 9, 52	0 6, 50	6 10, 31	11 8, 38	8 23, 43	5 21, 27		
40	20, 26	34 4 15, 24	10 8, 46	1 23, 9	4 3, 6	4 13, 43	3 1, 27	11 23, 38	11 19, 16		
50	18, 3	43 11 13, 15	3 25, 57	8 6, 26	8 11, 23	2 17, 9	6 24, 19	2 19, 32	5 16, 26		
60	15, 40	0 0, 51	6 23, 4	9 13, 9	2 19, 43	0 13, 39	0 20, 35	10 17, 11	5 17, 16	11 13, 55	
70	13, 17	0 1, 0	1 26, 38	3 0, 20	9 3, 0	4 15, 56	10 24, 0	2 10, 3	8 15, 21	5 11, 14	
80	10, 53	9 0, 49	8 17, 32	3 16, 17	8 18, 12	8 18, 12	8 27, 16	2, 54	11 13, 16	11 8, 33	
90	8, 30	17 4, 40	2 4, 43	9 29, 35	0 20, 19	7 0, 57	9 25, 46	2 11, 10	5 5, 52		
100	6, 6	0 1, 26	11 8, 31	7 21, 55	4 12, 52	4 22, 46	5 4, 18	1 18, 38	5 9, 4	11 3, 11	
100	10 12, 13	0 2, 51	10 17, 1	3 13, 28	8 25, 43	9 13, 32	10 8, 36	3 7, 16	10 18, 9	10 6, 22	
300	9 18, 20	4, 17	9 25, 30	11 5, 44	1 8, 35	2 8, 17	3 12, 33	4 25, 54	3 27, 13	9 9, 33	
400	8 24, 27	5, 43	9 4, 3	6 27, 36	5 21, 27	7 1, 3	8 17, 11	6 14, 32	9 6, 18	8 12, 48	
500	8 0, 34	7, 9	8 12, 34	2 19, 33	10 4, 19	11 23, 50	1 21, 20	8 35, 10	2 15, 22	7 15, 56	
600	7 6, 41	8, 34	7 21, 5	10 11, 28	2 17, 10	4 16, 35	6 25, 47	9 21, 48	7 24, 21	6 19, 7	
700	6 12, 47	0 10, 0	6 29, 35	6 3, 22	7 0, 2	9 9, 20	0 0, 14	11 10, 27	1 3, 31	5, 22, 18	
800	5 18, 54	11 26, 6	8, 6	1 25, 37	11 12, 54	2 2, 6	5 4, 22	0 29, 5	6 12, 36	4 25, 20	
900	4 25, 1	12, 51	5 16, 37	9 17, 12	3 25, 48	6 24, 52	10 8, 40	2 17, 43	11 20, 40	5 28, 40	
1000	4 1, 8	0 14, 7	4 25, 7	5 9, 6	8 8, 37	11 17, 38	3 12, 57	4 6, 21	5 0, 45	3 1, 52	
Forwards	0 0, 0									0 0, 0	
Orion	0 29, 34	0 0, 0	1 5, 18	1 1, 57	0 1, 35	0 1, 0	0 2, 13	0 15, 45	1 18, 4	4 2, 46	
Khondad	1 29, 8		2 10, 25	2 3, 54	3, 11	2, 1	4, 59	1 1, 27	3 6, 18	8 5, 33	
Tir	2 28, 42		3 15, 53	3 5, 51	4, 46	3, 1	7, 29	1 17, 10	4 24, 12	0 8, 19	
Mordad	3 28, 17		4 21, 10	4 4, 48	6, 21	4, 1	9, 59	2 2, 53	6 12, 16	4 11, 5	
Shahrivar	4 27, 51		5 26, 17	5 9, 45	7, 57	5, 2	12, 28	2 18, 37	8 0, 19	8 13, 52	
Mehr	5 27, 25		7 1, 45	6 11, 42	9, 32	6, 2	14, 58	3 4, 20	9 18, 23	0 16, 38	
Ahar	6 26, 59	0 0, 1	8 7, 3	7 13, 38	11, 30	7, 2	17, 27	3 20, 3	11 6, 27	4 19, 24	
Ahar	7 26, 53		9 12, 28	8 15, 36	12, 42	8, 2	19, 57	4 5, 47	0 24, 31	8 22, 11	
Dey Mah	8 26, 7		10 17, 36	9 17, 33	14, 18	9, 3	22, 26	4 21, 30	2 12, 55	0 24, 37	
Behman	9 25, 42		11 22, 35	10 19, 30	15, 53	10, 3	24, 56	5 7, 13	4 0, 39	4 27, 43	
Behman	10 25, 16		0 28, 13	11 21, 27	17, 18	11, 3	27, 26	5 22, 57	5 18, 45	9 0, 30	
Five days	11 24, 30	0 0, 1	2 3, 30	0 23, 24	0 19, 4	0 12, 4	29, 54	5 8, 40	7 6, 47	1 3, 16	
1	0 0, 0	0 0, 0								0 0, 0	
2	0 0, 39		13, 11	0 13, 4	0 0, 3	0 0, 2	0 0, 5	0 0, 31	0 1, 36	0 4, 6	
3	0 1, 58		0 26, 21	0 26, 8	6	4	10	1, 34	3, 12	8, 11	
4	0 2, 57		1 9, 32	1 9, 12	10	6	18	1, 54	4, 26	12, 17	
5	0 3, 57		1 22, 42	1 22, 16	13	8	20	2, 6	6, 24	16, 22	
6	0 4, 56		2 5, 53	2 5, 19	16	10	25	2, 38	8, 1	20, 28	
7	0 5, 55		2 19, 3	2 18, 23	19	12	30	3, 9	9, 37	24, 33	
8	0 6, 54		3 2, 14	3 1, 27	22	14	35	3, 40	11, 13	28, 39	
9	0 7, 53		3 15, 25	3 14, 31	25	16	40	4, 12	12, 19	1 2, 44	
10	0 8, 52		3 28, 25	3 27, 35	29	18	45	4, 23	14, 25	1 6, 50	
10	0 9, 51		4 11, 46	4 10, 39	0 0, 32	20	0 0, 50	5, 14	0 16, 1	10, 56	
20	0 19, 45		8 23, 32	8 21, 58	0 1, 4	0 0, 40	0 1, 40	0 10, 29	1 2, 1	21, 51	
The hour	0 0, 2	0 0, 0	0 0, 33	0 0, 33	0 0, 0	0 0, 0	0 0, 0	0 0, 1	0 0, 4	0 0, 10	

چنانچه در وصف لوح اصفهان است و
 صورت آن کج نه لوحی از حطب صلب
 یا صفت از اطولش یک ذراع و عرضش کمتر
 از آن ذراع و در استوار سطح لوح بعد از پاک کردن
 کند و بر وجه لوح مثلثی قائم الزاویه را رسم
 کند چنانچه یک از دو ضلع را روی قائم
 شدت بر آویزد و ضلع لوح بود کل خطی که
 ضلع باشد ضلع اطول را روی قائم را که قائم
 شدت است بر پشت و چنانچه قسم کند بر این
 ساعات و هر قسمی را آنست مابین قدر
 که تو از آن محب صفر و یک لوح قسمت کنی
 و ضلع آنها بر دو قسمت کنی و هر قسمی را آنست
 که باید که تو از آن قسمت کنی و اگر فاسد بر آید

۱۰۰
 ۱۰۱
 ۱۰۲
 ۱۰۳
 ۱۰۴
 ۱۰۵
 ۱۰۶
 ۱۰۷
 ۱۰۸
 ۱۰۹
 ۱۱۰
 ۱۱۱
 ۱۱۲
 ۱۱۳
 ۱۱۴
 ۱۱۵
 ۱۱۶
 ۱۱۷
 ۱۱۸
 ۱۱۹
 ۱۲۰
 ۱۲۱
 ۱۲۲
 ۱۲۳
 ۱۲۴
 ۱۲۵
 ۱۲۶
 ۱۲۷
 ۱۲۸
 ۱۲۹
 ۱۳۰
 ۱۳۱
 ۱۳۲
 ۱۳۳
 ۱۳۴
 ۱۳۵
 ۱۳۶
 ۱۳۷
 ۱۳۸
 ۱۳۹
 ۱۴۰
 ۱۴۱
 ۱۴۲
 ۱۴۳
 ۱۴۴
 ۱۴۵
 ۱۴۶
 ۱۴۷
 ۱۴۸
 ۱۴۹
 ۱۵۰
 ۱۵۱
 ۱۵۲
 ۱۵۳
 ۱۵۴
 ۱۵۵
 ۱۵۶
 ۱۵۷
 ۱۵۸
 ۱۵۹
 ۱۶۰
 ۱۶۱
 ۱۶۲
 ۱۶۳
 ۱۶۴
 ۱۶۵
 ۱۶۶
 ۱۶۷
 ۱۶۸
 ۱۶۹
 ۱۷۰
 ۱۷۱
 ۱۷۲
 ۱۷۳
 ۱۷۴
 ۱۷۵
 ۱۷۶
 ۱۷۷
 ۱۷۸
 ۱۷۹
 ۱۸۰
 ۱۸۱
 ۱۸۲
 ۱۸۳
 ۱۸۴
 ۱۸۵
 ۱۸۶
 ۱۸۷
 ۱۸۸
 ۱۸۹
 ۱۹۰
 ۱۹۱
 ۱۹۲
 ۱۹۳
 ۱۹۴
 ۱۹۵
 ۱۹۶
 ۱۹۷
 ۱۹۸
 ۱۹۹
 ۲۰۰

TRANSLATION

f.15r

- 1 CONCLUSION, On the Construction of the Plate
of Conjunctions. And
- 2 (so) get its picture; a plate of hard wood, or
yellow copper,
- 3 or brass, that its length be one cubit and its
width more than
- 4 two thirds of a cubit. And, to the extent
possible, attempt to make the surface of the
plate flat.
- 5 And on the face of the plate draw a right
triangle
- 6 such that each one of the two legs of the
triangle be parallel to two sides of the plate
respectively, at a proper distance.
- 8 Then the longer leg of the triangle, which is
the base
- 9 of the triangle, divide into twenty-four parts
for
- 10 the hours, and each part is divided into sixty
(parts) or to the amount
- 11 which it can be (divided), taking into account
the smallness or largeness of the plate.
- 12 And the *shorter* leg, having been divided
into sixteen parts, each part is divided into
sixty,
- 13 or to the extent to which it can be divided.
And if the divisions of the (planetary) paths

The method of verifying the right angle is this, with a compass from one of the two sides of the right angle, lay off three equal parts, lay off the other side, and from the end of the compass, lay off four parts, and from the end of the third part to the end of the fourth part join a line so that it is the chord of the angle. If the opening of the compass is five parts (the angle is verified), and otherwise it is not a right (angle). Its proof is that the squares on the two sides of the right angle are equal to the square of the chord of the triangle, as explained in (the Theorem of) the Bride (the Pythagorean Theorem).

*Marginal correction.

I.e., in the width of the plate have that amount outside the triangle that the number(s) of the parts of travel (s) can be written, and in the length have that amount that the rulers and numbers of hours may find place.

باقسام ساعات برابر باشد در برابر کے
 و خودی محشر بود استخوان لا و جو با پس
 از ہر قسمی از اقسام صلحیں خطوط اخراج کنند
 موازی صلح آخر تا متصل شود بخنطی
 کہ اقسام آن صلح دیگر موازی این صلح
 اخراج کرد و یکشد و تمیز میان خطوط خارج
 از مقام ساعات و اجزاء سرات و خطوط
 خارجہ از دقایق هر یک با لوان مختلفہ
 کنند و همچنین خسائے اجزاء و دقایق را
 نیز بلونی مغایر آنها تمیز کنند کہ عند الغلہ
 آسان کرد و در خارج صلح اطول مثلث
 خضری کند سر تا سر لوح کہ عرضش بقدر
 اصبعی باشد و عمقش بمقتداری صالح بود و

TRANSLATION

f.15v

- 1 be equal to the divisions of the hours, in largeness
- 2 and smallness (of divisions), it will be better; adornment is unnecessary. Then,
- 3 from each of the divisions of the two sides, extend lines
- 4 parallel to the other side until they join the line(s)
- 5 which have been extended from the divisions of that other side parallel to this (first) side.
- 6 And (for) distinguishing between the lines extended
- 7 from the divisions of hours and parts of (planetary) paths, and the lines
- 8 extending from the minutes, make each in different colors.
- 9 And in the same fashion, the fifths of parts and minutes
- 10 also distinguish them by a color differing from those (others), that operation (with it)
- 11 be facilitated. And outside the longer side of the triangle
- 12 make a trough from one side of the plate to the other, that its width be to the amount of a
- 13 digit and its depth be to a proper amount, and

واندرون خضر از جانب قاعده مثلث بر مرکز آن
 و در پهلوی این خضر خضری دیگر کنند که خضرتش غرض
 باشد از اول برابر بود و طولش از حد آن
 قاعده تا مثلث از باغ قاعده مثلث بود و درون
 این خضر از جانب حاشیه لوح بزرگتر کنند
 و اگر این خضر از اول متصل کنند شاید پیش
 سه سطره بسازند از حشمت یا صفت
 که غلط نیز یک بمقدار و سعت خضر بود و طریقی
 یکی از این مناظر بعد از مثلث قاعده مثلث بود
 و این را سطره عدات بنامیم و طول هر یک
 از آن دوازده و دیگر بمقدار مثلث قاعده مثلث
 باشد یعنی را سطره بنامیم و دیگر
 را سطره بنامیم پس سطره لیسل را

TRANSLATION

f.16r

- 1 make the inside of the trough bigger than (it
is) beside the base of the triangle.
- 2 And beside that trough, make another trough
such that its width and depth
- 3 be equal to (those of) the first trough, and
its length
- 4 (as compared to) the limit of that right *angle*
of the triangle should be three fourths the
base of the triangle, and the inside
- 5 of this trough is made bigger than the (width)
alongside the margin of the plate.
- 6 And if this trough is joined with the first
trough, perhaps (it will be satisfactory).
Then
- 7 make three rulers, of wood or brass,
- 8 that the thickness of each one to be the amount
of the width of the trough, and the length of
- 9 one of these rulers be to the amount of a third
of the base of the triangle.
- 10 And we call this the next-day ruler, and let
the length of each
- 11 of these other two be to the amount of two
thirds of the base of the triangle.
- 12 One of these we call the day ruler, and the
other
- 13 the night ruler. Then put the night ruler

*Marginal addition.

در حفرهای وسطی غداً دیویم
را در حفر راوی کنند بر سطح
غداً از جانب راوی فارغ بود و این
سطح بر این حفر حرکت کند و از وجه
الوج مرتفع نگردد و سطوح ظاهر سطح
با سطح الوج بمشابه یک سطح استوی گردد
و در سطح را با جره قاع مشاب
و قاعش قمت کند پس سطح غداً بهشت
قسم و آن دوی دیگر شازده قسمی بود
و اقامه اعداد بر سطح از جانب راوی
حاده بسوی راوی قائمه اندیشند
و در میان حفر و محیط الوج اعداد ساعات
و خسات و قاین قاع مشاب

TRANSLATION

f.16v

- 1 in the second trough, and the next-day and
day rulers
- 2 put in the first trough in such fashion that
the
- 3 next-day ruler be from the side of the right
angle. And these
- 4 rulers must be able to move (i.e. slide) in
these troughs, but should not be (capable of
being) raised above the surface of the
- 5 plate, but the visible surfaces of the rulers
- 6 should be like a single plane surface.
- 7 And divide the face(s) of the ruler(s) into
the divisions of the base of the triangle and
- 8 its minutes. So the next-day ruler (will be
divided) into eight
- 9 parts, and those other two (into) sixteen, and
- 10 write the signs of the numbers of each ruler
from the side of the
- 11 acute angle along the base of the triangle.
- 12 And between the trough and the perimeter of
the plate, write the numbers of the hours
- 13 and of the fives of minutes of the base of
the triangle

از جانب زاویه حاده بنویسند تا زاویه
تایید و اعتدال و جبر را، سیرات و
خساست و قیاس این را از زاویه قائمه
سرو تا آخر اجرا بنویسند در محدوده
زاویه حاده که است ۱۰۰ درجه و سائر جانی
از نو کرده شده است شقیقی دقیق کنند
و خطی از آن شقیق که در است
بمقدار وتر زاویه قائمه یا بزوجه و خط
مخفف سازند بمقدار وتر مذکور و بخسبند
بر شقیق مذکور محکم کنند که آن
خط بر آن محور حرکت کند و ما
(این خط را میطامید)
عالم جزوات لوح است

TRANSLATION

f.17r

- 1 from the side of the acute angle to the
- 2 right angle. And write the numbers of the
divisions of (planetary) paths, and
- 3 the fives of their minutes from the right angle
- 4 from beginning to end. And at the extremity
of
- 5 the acute angle, which is from (where) the
beginning of the numbers of the hours,
- 6 has been made, drill a minute hole.
- 7 And make a thread to pass through that hole,
(in length)
- 8 to the amount of the hypotenuse of the right
triangle. Or, on the face of the plate emplace
an
- 9 edged ruler, to the amount of the (above-)
mentioned hypotenuse, and fasten it to an axis
- 10 on the (above-)mentioned drill(-hole) such
that that
- 11 ruler move about that axis. And we
- 12 call this ruler the turning ruler.
- 13 And the picture of the plate is this:

الحمد لله المهيمن

f.17v

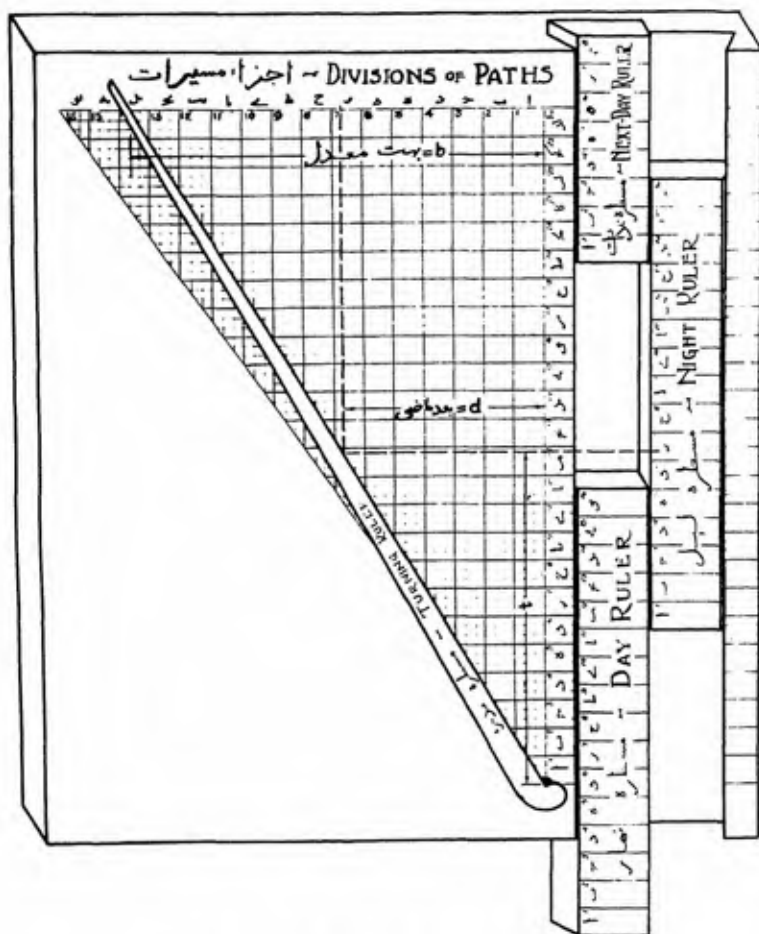


Figure 2. The Plate of Conjunctions

مقالم دوم در بیان طریقت
 مشتمل بر باب و خاتمه باب اول
 در تزیین آله اوج شمس که بر صیقل کرده بود
 بر محاذی اوج شمس خند از اهر آینه
 یعنی بر موضع شمس که از جدول گرفته اند
 و سار را در احداثیاب فرود بند و چون زمانی
 بگذرد که اوج از موضع خود حرکت کرد
 سار را بر آورد باز همان حرکت کنند
 باب دوم در استخراج اوساط کوکب
 وقتی که خواهند اوساط کوکب در آن وقت
 استخراج کنند آن وقت را از تاریخ فارسی
 معلوم کنند اگر در سالهای ناقصه مبسوط باشد
 بیست و پنج در آن سال نوشته شد برای هر کوکب

این کتاب در کتابخانه
 سلطنتی است
 در روز ۱۰/۱۲/۱۳۰۳
 در شهر تهران
 در کتابخانه
 سلطنتی
 در روز ۱۰/۱۲/۱۳۰۳
 در شهر تهران

f.18r

1 THE SECOND TREATISE:

On the Operation of the Plate of Heavens,
Containing Fifteen Chapters and a Conclusion.

CHAPTER ONE:

On the Arrangement of the Instrument. The apogee
of the sun, which had been put on the plate,
put opposite the apogee of the sun on the divi-
sions of the ring,
i.e. put it on the position of the sun which has
been obtained from the table.

And stick the peg into one of the holes, and
when a time

passes, so that the apogee should have moved
from its position,

the peg having been withdrawn, give (the plate)
that motion,

CHAPTER TWO: On the Extraction of the Mean
(Positions).

Whenever it is desired to extract the mean
(positions) of the planets at that (i.e. at
such and such a) time,

determine that time from the Persian calendar.

If it is in the explicit years (of the table),

take exactly what is written opposite that year
for each planet.

We have set the beginning
of the mean motions at the
incomplete (or explicit
Yazdigerd) year 851, which
is the first of the year
of the enthronement of His
Majesty the sovereign upon
the seat of rulership, may
God strengthen the throne
of the kingdom by its endur-
ing until the Day of Judg-
ment, and increasing the
marks of his justice and
presence for all time!
Amen, O Lord of the Worlds!

بگیرند و اگر پیشتر یا پستر باشد باز آسانی که ما
بن آدم بقدر آنکه از سالهای نامرغوب باشد
بگیرند و آنچه در برابر آن سال ناقص است با آنچه
در آن سال آسانتر گرفته اند جمع کنند اگر سال مطلوب
از سالهای ناقص بود و آنرا آنچه باز آسانها
تأمین نمایند از آنچه باز آسانها گرفته اند نقصان
بگیرند از آن ماه و روز مطلوب از جدول
شماره و نام آنچه یا بند بر حاصل اول سال فسرینند
و در آن روز و ماه و روز مطلوب حاصل شود هر
نصف النهار بطول قسطنطنیه صیبت می خست
و از آنجا عن الافات والبلية وان سنة قیامت
و اگر بطول عیسیر سه تا چهار ماه از الطولین
را ساعت و دقیقه کرده هر چند که شود حاصل

f.18v

- 1 But if it be before or after, take opposite a
year (such) that
- 2 between it *and the desired year* there be to
the amount of one of (the tabulated) sum(s)
of complete years.
- 3 And that which is opposite that incomplete
year to that which
- 4 has been taken opposite that complete year,
add if the desired year
- 5 is after the incomplete years (tabulated).
Otherwise that which was obtained opposite the
- 6 complete years, and that which was obtained
opposite the incomplete years, subtract
(them).
- 7 Then, that which is found opposite the desired
month and day from the table of
- 8 months and days, add to the result (obtained
for) the first of the year
- 9 so that the mean (position) in the desired
year and month and day result, for
- 10 noon at the longitude of Constantinople, may
she preserve in safekeeping
- 11 her lord from calamities and affliction, and
that is 60;0°.
- 12 And if (it) is desired at a longitude other
than 60°, (the amount) between the two longi-
tudes
- 13 having been made (into) hours and minutes,
whatever it become, the result of

* Marginal addition.

حرکت یک ساعت را که در جدول نهاده ایم در این
 ساعت و دو ثانی ضرب کند و حاصل ضرب را
 بر حاصل وسط از نصف النهار سه زیاده کند
 اگر طول مطلوب کمتر باشد و نقصان کند اگر بیشتر
 بود و همچنین اگر در وقتی غیر نصف النهار
 خواهند ساعات و دو ثانی گذشته از نصف
 النهار یا باقی تا نصف النهار را در حرکت وسط
 در یک ساعت ضرب کند و حاصل را بر حاصل
 مذکور افزایند اگر بعد از نصف النهار بود و نقصان
 کند اگر قبل از نصف النهار باشد حاصل وسط
 مطلوب بود در وقت مطلوب و وسط
 شمس بعینه وسط مغربین است و این مساوی
 وسط و خاصه هر یک از علویه است یعنی

TRANSLATION

f.19r

- 1 the motion (for) one hour, which we have put
in the table, multiply by that (number of)
- 2 hours and minutes, and increase by the product
- 3 the result of the mean (motion) for the noon
of (longitude) 60
- 4 if the desired longitude is less, and decrease
(it) if (it) is more.
- 5 And in the same manner, if (it) is wanted at
a time other than noon,
- 6 the hours and minutes passed beyond noon,
- 7 or those remaining until noon, multiply by
the motion of the mean
- 8 in one hour, and the result is added to the
- 9 (above-)mentioned result if (it) is after
noon, and decrease (it)
- 10 if it is before noon, the result will be the
- 11 desired mean at the desired time. And the
mean of the
- 12 sun is exactly the mean of the two inferior
(planets), and this is equal to
- 13 the mean anomaly of each of the superior
(planets), i.e., it is

مساوی خاصه مرکبه ایشانست و چون وسط او
 سه نقطه وسط سقیمین است و وسط ایشانرا هر چند
 بنمایدیم و بجای وسط خاصه مرکبه ایشانرا بنویسیم
 اینها **باب** سوم در معرفت تقویم
 انساب و تعدیل او و بعدش از مرکز عالم ریش
 وسط از اجزاء حجره علامتی نهند و ما از اعلات
 وسط را اینم پس حرف سطر را بر علامت
 وسط و مرکز استعار بگذارند چنانکه مبدأ اقسام
 سطر بر علامت وسط افتد و حرف عضاد را
 موازی سطر گردانند میسبی دو قوس که واقع
 بود میان سطر طین از دو طرف مساوی کرده
 و بر موضع عضاد از اجزاء حجره بقرب علامت
 وسط از اجزاء حجره علامتی نهند و از آن موضع موم

اینها
 در تقویم
 انساب
 و تعدیل
 او و بعدش
 از مرکز
 عالم ریش
 وسط از
 اجزاء حجره
 علامتی
 نهند و ما
 از اعلات
 وسط را
 اینم پس
 حرف سطر
 را بر
 علامت
 وسط و
 مرکز
 استعار
 بگذارند
 چنانکه
 مبدأ
 اقسام
 سطر
 بر
 علامت
 وسط
 افتد و
 حرف
 عضاد
 را
 موازی
 سطر
 گردانند
 میسبی
 دو
 قوس
 که
 واقع
 بود
 میان
 سطر
 طین
 از
 دو
 طرف
 مساوی
 کرده
 و
 بر
 موضع
 عضاد
 از
 اجزاء
 حجره
 بقرب
 علامت
 وسط
 از
 اجزاء
 حجره
 علامتی
 نهند
 و
 از
 آن
 موضع
 موم

f.19v

- 1 equal to their compound anomaly. And since
- 2 the sun's mean
- 3 is exactly the mean of the inferior (planets),
- 4 we have not put their mean (longitudes) in the
- 5 table,
- 6 and in place of it we have written their
- 7 compound anomalies.
- 8 CHAPTER THREE. On the Determination of the
- 9 True Longitude of the
- 10 Sun, and Its Equation, and Its Distance from
- 11 the Center of the Universe. According to
- 12 (the sun's)
- 13 mean (longitude) put a mark on the divisions
- 14 of the ring, and this we call the mark of the
- 15 mean. Then, make the edge of the ruler to
- 16 pass alongside the mark of the
- 17 mean and the fictitious center so that the
- 18 beginning of divisions of the
- 19 ruler fall on the mark of the mean. And (then)
- 20 the edge of the alidade
- 21 is made parallel to the ruler, i.e., the two
- 22 arcs which are formed
- 23 between the two rulers having been made equal.
- 24 And at the position of the alidade at the
- 25 divisions of the ring, near the mark of the
- 26 mean at the divisions of the ring, a mark is
- 27 placed and that we call the true position.

This is in order that the
distance of the sun from
the center of the universe
can be ascertained.

خواهیم از اول حل تا موضع مقوم مقوم نبود و ما این علامت
 وسط و موضع مقوم تعدیل باشد و میان مرکز مستقیم
 و علامت وسط از جنسها، مسطره بعد آفتاب
 از مرکز عالم جنسهای که نصف قطر خارج شد
 باشند و آنه اعلم **باب چهارم**
 در معرفت تقویم ماه چون وسط شمس را از وسط شمس
 نقصان کنند بعد ماند و چون تضعیف بعد کنند مرکز
 قمر معلوم گردد و از آن بعد مضاعف خوانند پس مری
 عضاد را بر مثل مرکز قمر از اجزاء، حجره محاسبه
 بر موضع تقاطع حرف عضاد، بمنطقه قمر علامت
 کنند این علامت مرکز قمر بود پس حرف منظره
 را بر نقطه محاذاه و علامات مرکز نهند
 و عضاده را موازی منظره کنند و بر موقع مری عضاد

f.20r

- 1 From the first (point) of Aries to the true
position will be the true longitude, and (the
angular distance) between the mark of the
- 2 mean and the true position is the equation.
And between the fictitious center
- 3 and the mark of the mean, (measured) in divi-
sions of the ruler is the sun's distance
- 4 from the center of the universe, in such
divisions that half the external (i.e.,
deferent) diameter is sixty,
- 5 but God knows better. CHAPTER FOUR
- 6 On the Determination of the True Longitude
of the Moon. If the sun's mean is taken
from the moon's mean
- 7 a distance remains (the mean elongation), and
if the distance is doubled the center (of the
deferent) of the
- 8 moon becomes known, and this is called the
doubled distance (the double elongation).
Then having put the pointer
- 9 according to the moon's center on the divi-
sions of the ring,
- 10 at the place of intersection of the edge of
the alidade with the moon's deferent, make a
mark.
- 11 Let this be the mark of the moon's (epicycle)
center. Then put the edge of the ruler
- 12 along the opposite point and the mark of the
center,
- 13 and make the alidade parallel the ruler, and
at the place where the pointer of the alidade
has fallen

از اجزاء حروف علامت کنند و این مبدأ حرکت
خاصه بود و بعد از آن عضاده را بر خلاف توالی
حرکت دهند بعد از آن خاصه تقریبی خاصه
هر چند برح و درجه و دقیقه که بود ازین مبدأ آن قدر
برح و درجه بشمارند هر جا که شسته شود بهر قسم
اختلاف علامت کنند و لا محاله بر خلاف جهت
شسته حرکت خاصه بود و این علامت اختلاف
قرن بود و بعد از آن حرف سطر را بر حسب دو علامت
مرکز و اختلاف فاصله و عضاده را موازی کرده اند
بر موقع غری عضاده بقرب علامت مرکز علامت
کنند بر اجزاء حروف و این را موضع مقوم نامیدیم پس
فصل و سطر قرار بر مرکز بر مابین اقول حل و موضع
مقوم را یاد کرده اند و هم حاضی است شد و وایه اعلم

f.20v

- 1 make a mark at the divisions of the ring. And
- 2 this is the beginning of the motion of the
- 3 anomaly. And after this move the alidade
- 4 contrary to the succession (of the zodiacal
- 5 signs)
- 6 to the amount of the lunar anomaly, i.e., the
- 7 anomaly
- 8 however many signs and degrees and minutes it
- 9 be, from this beginning, count off that many
- 10 signs and degrees. Wherever it ends, at the
- 11 mark of the
- 12 difference, make a mark. And make sure it is
- 13 opposite the direction of the
- 14 end of the anomalistic motion, and let this be
- 15 the difference mark of the
- 16 moon. And after this, the edge of the ruler
- 17 is placed along both the mark of the
- 18 center and the difference, and make the alidade
- 19 parallel (to the ruler).
- 20 At the position of the pointer of the alidade
- 21 near the mark of the center make a mark
- 22 on the divisions of the ring, and this we call
- 23 the true position. Then
- 24 the excess of the moon's mean over the center
- 25 between the first (point) of Aries and the
- 26 true position, let (it) be increased. The true
- 27 longitude results, but God knows better.

باب پنجم در معرفت تقویم حسیه مجریه
هری عضاد و بر مثل وسط نهند از اجزاء مجزیه
و هر حرف مسطره را بر نقطه معدل لایسره گذرانند
بعد از ای عضاد و سازند پس بر موضع تقاطع حرکت
مسطره با منطبقه نیز گویند علامت کنند آن علامت
مهرگز آن کوکب بود پس مری را پس عضاد و
بر وسط شش نهند جهت هر یک از کوکب
علویه و بر رسم اختلاف هر یک علامت
کنند بر صفحه این علامت اختلاف طوری
آن کوکب بود و لا محاله علامات اختلاف
علویه بر خط وسطی و می باشد که وصل بود میان
مهرگز و نظیر وسط آفتاب و جهت بقیه مری
عضاد و دیگر خاصه هر یک یک نهند و بر رسم

f.21r

- 1 CHAPTER FIVE. On the Determination of the
True Longitude of the Five Planets.
- 2 Place the pointer of the alidade according to
the mean (longitude) on the divisions of the
ring,
- 3 and, having made the edge of the ruler to pass
alongside the equant,
- 4 make it parallel the alidade. Then, at the
place of intersection of the edge of the
- 5 ruler with the deferent of each planet make a
mark. This shall be the
- 6 center mark of that planet. Then put the
pointer of the head of the alidade
- 7 at the mean of the sun in the case of each
one of the
- 8 superior planets, and at the difference mark
of each make a mark
- 9 on the plate. This will be the longitudinal
difference mark of
- 10 that planet, and make sure that the difference
mark (in the case) of a
- 11 superior (planet) is always along a line
which joins
- 12 the center to the opposite (i.e., the supple-
ment) of the sun's mean (longitude). But as
for the inferior (planets), the pointer of the
- 13 alidade is put along the compound anomaly of
each one, and at the mark of the

اختلاف بر صفیحه علامتی نهند و این علامت
 اختلاف آن کوکب بود و این نیز در جهت
 نظر خاصه مرکبه واقع خواهد شد و نقطه ذکب
 سطح ابر علامت مرکز و اختلاف هر کوکب
 که در این نزد مرقع مری عضاده که بقرب علامت
 مرکز بود و علامتی نهند و آن موضع مقوم و از اول
 حل تا موضع مقوم مقوم آن کوکب بود و الله اعلم
 باب ششم در معرفت تعدیلات و معرفت
 مرکز خاصه معدله اگر چه در استخراج تقویم باین
 جهت احتیاج باین تعدیلات نداریم مکن چون خواهیم
 که بدانیم بر مثل وسط ظهر کوکبه بر جره علامت بکشند
 و حرف عضاده را بر علامت مرکز که رانده بر
 مری عضاده بقرب وسط علامتی دیگر کشند بر جره

که رانند و چون میسازند
 را موارید از کردار اند

f.21v

- 1 difference put a mark on the plate. And this
- is the mark of the
- 2 difference of that planet, and this also will
- be fall in a direction
- 3 opposite to that of the compound anomaly. And
- after that, make the edge of the
- 4 ruler pass along the mark(s) of the center and
- the difference of each planet,
- 5 *and put the edge of the alidade parallel to the
- ruler.* At the position of the pointer of the
- alidade which is near the mark of the
- 6 center a mark is put, and that will be the
- true position, and from the first (point) of
- 7 Aries to the true position will be the true
- longitude of that planet,
- 8 but God knows better. CHAPTER SIX. On the
- Determination of Equations, and the Determina-
- tion
- 9 of the Center, and the Adjusted Anomaly. Although
- for the extraction of the true longitudes with
- this
- 10 instrument we do not need these equations,
- nevertheless if we want
- 11 to know (them), according to the mean of each
- planet, a mark is put on the ring,
- 12 and, having put the edge of the alidade along-
- side the mark of the (epicycle) center, at the
- 13 pointer of the alidade near the mean (i.e., on
- the same side as the mean), make another mark.
- On the ring,

*Marginal correction.

مابین العلمین از اجزای تعدیل شمس و تعدیل
 اول تختین بود و تعدیل اول سمر بقدر مابین
 علامت ثانی و علامت همداء حرکت خاصه بود
 و تعدیل ثانی میخیزد بقدر مابین علامت ثانی و موضع
 مقوم آن کوکب بود و موضع علامت ثانی در وسط
 معدل شمس و هر یک از کوکب تختین باشد
 و چون اوج هر کوکب را از وسط معدل او نقصان
 کنند مرکز معدل آن کوکب باقی ماند و چون وسط
 معدل هر یک از علویه را از وسط شمس و وسط
 معدل هر یک از سفلیه را از خاصیه مرکبه او نقصان
 کنند خاصه معدل آن کوکب باقی ماند و ابداً علم
 باب هفتم در معرفت عرض کوکب
 سته کجاست قمر و سراج و کسیر را بر تقویم قمر افزایند

f.22r

- 1 between the two marks (measured) in the divi-
sions of the ring will be the equation of the
sun and the
- 2 first equation of the planet(s). And the first
equation of the moon will be to the amount
between
- 3 the second mark and the mark of the beginning
of the anomalistic motion.
- 4 And the second equation of a planet will be to
the amount between the second mark and the
- 5 true position of that planet. And the place
of the second mark, let it be the
- 6 adjusted mean of the sun and any one of the
planets.
- 7 And if the (longitude of the) apogee of each
planet be subtracted from its adjusted mean,
- 8 the adjusted center of that planet will remain.
And if the
- 9 adjusted mean of each of the superior (planets)
be subtracted from the sun's mean, and the
- 10 adjusted mean of each of the inferior (planets)
from its compound anomaly,
- 11 the adjusted anomaly of that planet remains,
but God knows better.
- 12 CHAPTER SEVEN. On the Determination of the
Latitudes of the Six Planets.
- 13 In the case of the moon, increase the mean of
the nodes by the true longitude of the moon;

حصه عرض حاصل شود پس مری عضاده را بر مثل
 حصه عرض یا بر نظیر حصه عرض بخند از اجزاء حجره
 و نظر کنند که نقطه تقاطع حرف عضاده با دایره
 عرض تقریب چند خط واقع شده است از خطوط عرض
 آن قدر عرض بود پس حصه عرض اگر کمتر از شش
 برج باشد عرض او شمالی بود و اگر بیشتر از شش
 برج باشد عرض او جنوبی بود بود بحمت عرض علویه
 و عرض ثانی سفلیین بر مرکز معدل هر یک از کواکب
 علویه ماسین اوج و را اس آن کواکب را بیفزایند

ماسین اوج کواکب علویه و را اس آن		
ب	ل	م
ق	ع	ص

و حاصل را مرکز عرض ناییم و در سفلیین مرکز

f.22v

- 1 the argument of the (lunar) latitude will result.
Then the pointer of the alidade is put according
to
- 2 the argument of the latitude, or corresponding
to the argument of the latitude on the divisions
of the ring.
- 3 And observe that the point of intersection of
the edge of the alidade with the circle of
- 4 latitude of the moon, on how many lines it has
fallen, of the latitude lines.
- 5 That will be the amount of the latitude. Then
the argument of the latitude, if it is less
than six
- 6 signs, its latitude will be northern; and if
it is more than six
- 7 signs its latitude will be southern. As for
the latitude of the superior (planets)
- 8 and the second latitude of the inferior planets,
increase by the adjusted center of each one of
the
- 9 superior planets between the apogee and the
ascending node of that planet,

10	Between the apogee of a superior (planet) and its ascending node:		
11	η	\downarrow	σ
12	140;0	70;0	95;0

- 13 and the result we call the center of latitude.
And with the inferior planets, with the

معدل عل را تمام کنیم پس سری عضاده را بر مثل
 خاصه معدله از اجزای آن جدا کنند و بر صفحه بر رسم
 اختلاف علامتی کنند و این را علامت اول نمایند
 پس عضاده را بر قطر استوائی کم کرده اند و حرف
 سطر را بر علامت اول گذارند. موازی عضاده
 سازند و بر تقاطع حرف سطر و قطر استوائی
 دیگر کنند و این را علامت ثانیه خوانیم پس حرف عضاده
 را بر قطر استوائی بچین کرده اند و علامت ثانیه را بر
 عضاده نقل کنند و عضاده را بقدر غایت میل قطر
 مار بذر و و حصص بهر کوکب از جندها جدا کرده اند

غایت میل قطر مار بذر و و حصص

نقطه	نقطه	نقطه	نقطه	نقطه
اول	دوم	سوم	چهارم	پنجم

f.23r

- 1 adjusted center we finish the operation. Then
- 2 the pointer of the alidade is put according to
- 3 the adjusted anomaly (measured) in the divi-
- 4 sions of the ring. And on the plate by the
- 5 mark of the
- 6 difference a mark is made, and this we call
- 7 the first mark.
- 8 Then let the alidade be erected perpendicular
- 9 to the equating diameter, and, the edge of the
- 10 ruler having been put beside the first mark,
- 11 make it parallel the alidade.
- 12 And at the intersection of the edge of the
- 13 ruler and the equating diameter let
- 14 another mark be made, and this we call the
- 15 second mark. Then the edge of the alidade
- 16 is turned so that it coincides with the equat-
- 17 ing diameter, and the second mark
- 18 is transferred to the alidade. And the alidade
- 19 is turned by the amount of the maximum inclina-
- 20 tion of the (epicyclic) diameter
- 21 passing (through) the epicyclic apogee and
- 22 perigee of each planet, (measured) from the
- 23 beginning of divisions.

24	Maximum inclination of the (epicyclic) diameter passing (through) the (epicyclic) apogee and perigee				
25	♄	♂	♂	♀	♀
26	4;30°	2;30°	2;15°	(-)2;30°	6;15°

پس بر صغیر بر موقع علامت نمایند که بر حرف عضاد
 کرده بودند علامتی که آنرا علامت ناله نامیم پس
 برای علویه مری عضاد را پیش غایت سل
 مایل از مبدی نهادند و حرف مسطر را بر علامت

علامت مایل کوکب از مبدی				
حرف	حرف	حرف	حرف	حرف
ا	ب	ج	د	ه

ناله گذرانده موازی عضاد سازند و بر صغیر از
 علامت ناله بر موقع حرف مسطر به بعد و قسم
 اختلاف آن کوکب در جهت مبدی اجزای است
 خط کشید و این خط را خط سل نامیم و جهت سفلی
 حرف مسطر را بر علامت ناله نهادند مسطر را
 موازی قطر استوار کردند و از علامت ناله

f.23v

- 1 Then, on the plate, at the place of the second
mark, which had been made on the edge of the
alidade,
- 2 a mark is made, and that we call the third
mark. Then,
- 3 for the superior (planets), the pointer of the
alidade is put according to the maximum incli-
nation
- 4 of the inclining (deferent plane) from the
parecliptic, and, the edge of the ruler having
been placed along the

5	Maximum inclination of the inclining of the planets from the parecliptic.					
6	♄	♅	♆	♇	♈	♉
7	2;30°	1;30°	1;0°	0;10°	0;45°	

- 8 third mark, it is made parallel to the alidade.
And on the plate, from
- 9 the third mark on the place of the edge of
the ruler to an amount (being) the
- 10 difference mark of that planet in the direc-
tion of the beginning of divisions in proper
style
- 11 a line is drawn. And this line we call the
line of inclination. And for the inferior
(planets)
- 12 the edge of the ruler having been put along
the third mark, the ruler is made to
- 13 parallel the equating diameter, and from the
third mark

بر صغیر در جهت مبداء اجزای بعد رقم اختلاف آن
 که یک خط مثل یک بند پس بر نقطه استوار بر سر
 نقطه عرض علامتی کند که بعد او از علامت ثانی
 بعد از علامت ثالث باشد از نقطه عرض بعد
 اگر مرکز عرض اقل از شش برج بود و الا از نقطه
 عرض شش بره باستعانة اجزاء مسطر یا بر کار
 و این علامت را بدل نقطه عرض اینم و بر خط مثل
 نقطه طلب کنیم که بعد میان آن نقطه و بدل
 عرض مساوی بعد میان بدل نقطه عرض علامت
 اولی باشد باستعانة بر کار یا مسطر و این را
 مطلوبه خواهیم بعد از آن حرف مسطر را بنقطه
 مطلوبه و بدل نقطه عرض گذرانند بنگاه دارند و عضله
 را موازی می مسطر گذرانند و عضله موازی می مسطر

f.24r

- 1 on the plate, in the direction of the beginning
of divisions, to the amount of the difference
mark of that
- 2 planet, the line of inclination is drawn. Then,
on the equating diameter near
- 3 the point of latitude a mark is made such that
its distance from the second mark shall be
- 4 to the amount of the distance of the third mark
from the far latitude point
- 5 if the center of latitude is less than six
signs, and otherwise from the near
- 6 latitude point with the assistance of the divi-
sions of the ruler or compass,
- 7 and this mark we call the substitute for the
point of latitude. And on the line of inclina-
tion
- 8 we seek a point such that the distance between
that point and the substitute for the point of
- 9 latitude shall be equal to the distance between
the substitute for the point of latitude [and]*
the
- 10 first mark, with the help of a compass or ruler,
and we call this the
- 11 desired point. After that, the edge of the
ruler having been put along the
- 12 desired point and the substitute for the point
of latitude, hold it (there), and let the ali-
dade be made
- 13 parallel to the ruler. And, the alidade being
parallel to the ruler,

*Insert , here.

و چنانچه نظر کنند بر مری عضاده که بر کلام پس
افزوده است از اجزاء مجزیه و بعد از آن طرف
نظر استراحت است این غایت مثل جزه کوکب
از قریه بر بوده از سطح مایل در سبکین خود و علویه آن
اجزاء را از غایت مثل مایل از مثل ایضا نشان کنند
اگر محتاجه بعد از نقل از پنج یا کمتر از شش بار با خارج
بود و الا از مایه کنند تا غایت مثل جزه کوکب
از قریه بر از سطح بروج حاصل شود پس عضاده را
بر نظر استراحت ایم کرد اینده بر حرف عضاده بر بوی
تقاطع حرف عضاده یا خطی از سطوح عرض که
همانوی غایت مثل سر کوکب از اند و نیز
از سطح مایل بروج و علامتی کنند و با آنرا علامت
عرض خواهم و بقیه ذلک مری عضاده را

f.24v

- 1 thereupon observe along (to) the pointer of the
 alidade (to see) on which division it
- 2 has fallen of the divisions of the ring, and
 its distance from the direction of the equating
 diameter
- 3 is how much. This will be the maximum [inclination]^{*} of the part of the planet
- 4 from the epicycle from the inclined surface,
 (i.e. deferent plane) in the inferior (planets);
 and in the superior (planets), those
- 5 parts of the extremity of the inclination of
 the deferent, let (them) be decreased from the
 parecliptic
- 6 if the adjusted anomaly is less than a quadrant
 or more than three quadrants,
- 7 and otherwise (it) is (to be) increased until
 the maximum inclination of the part of the
 planet
- 8 from the epicycle from the plane of the signs
 (i.e., the ecliptic) results. Then, the alidade
 having been erected
- 9 perpendicular to the equating diameter, along
 the edge of the alidade, at the place of
- 10 intersection of the alidade edge with (that)
 line of the latitude lines which is
- 11 equal to the maximum inclination of the part
 of the planet from the epicycle
- 12 to the surface which is inclined with (respect
 to that of the) signs, let a mark be made
 (there). And we call this the mark of
- 13 latitude. And after that, the pointer of the
 alidade having been placed

^{*}Read مثل for ميل.

مثل مرکز عرض از اجزاء حجره بنهاده بجا گشت
 که علامت عرض بر که ام خط واقع شده است این
 خطوط عرض آن عرض مطلوب بود پس اگر مرکز
 عرض جلوی مرکز باشد بر ج بود عرض شمالی باشد
 و اگر پیشتر باشد جنوبی بود و اگر مرکز معدل
 سفلیین کمتر از شش بر ج و خاصه معدل که کمتر
 از سه بر ج و یا پیشتر از سه بر ج بود و یا مرکز معدل
 پیشتر از شش بر ج و خاصه معدل که پیشتر از سه بر ج
 و کمتر از سه بر ج بود عرض شمالی زهره شمالی
 و از این عطار و جنوبی بود و الا از این عرض جنوبی
 و عطار و شمالی باشد اما عرض ثالث سفلیین
 تعدیل ثانی بگویند که اگر بعد پیدا کنند اگر مرکز
 معدل کمتر از سه بر ج یا پیشتر از سه بر ج باشد

f.25r

- 1 according to the center of latitude on the
- divisions of the ring, note
- 2 that the latitude has fallen on which line of
- 3 the lines of latitude; this will be the desired
- latitude. Then, if the center of
- 4 latitude of the superior (planet) is less than
- six signs its latitude will be north,
- 5 and if (it) is more, (its latitude will) be
- south. And if the adjusted center of the
- 6 inferior (planet) is less than six signs and
- the adjusted anomaly less than
- 7 three signs or more than nine signs, or less
- the adjusted center
- 8 more than six signs and the adjusted anomaly
- more than three signs
- 9 and less than nine signs, the second latitude
- of Venus will be north,
- 10 and that of Mercury south; and otherwise that
- of Venus south
- 11 and Mercury north. But (as for) the third
- latitude of the inferior (planets), let the
- 12 second equation of the planet be known at the
- greatest distance (i.e. at the apogee), if
- the
- 13 adjusted center is less than three signs or
- more than nine signs,

والا تعدل مالی کو کب را در مقابلہ الیج بداند
و ثلث سدس آن تعدیل را یکسیرند در زهر
و یکت عطار و تعدیل را پخت و قیقه ضرب
کنند اگر در بعدا بعد گرفت باشند و الا درشت
و قیقه ضرب کنند احراف حاصل کرد و پس
مثل احراف از خطوط عرض بگویند و عضادہ را
بر خط استوا قائم کرد آیند نظیر کنند کہ خط
مطلوب یعنی کہ خطی کہ مساوی انحراف است
برکہ ام جزو واقع شدہ است اذ اجزاء حرفت
عضادہ بران جبر علامتی کنند این علامت
عرض بود پس نمود در جبر بر مرکز تعدیل ہر کوکب
آزادہ کنند و حاصل را ما تر کہ عرض خوانیم پس
مری عضادہ را بر مرکز عرض نمند یا بر نظیر مرکز

f.25v

- 1 and otherwise let the second equation of the
planet be determined according to the apogee,
- 2 and take a third of a sixth of the equation
for Venus,
- 3 and for Mercury, multiply the equation by seven
minutes
- 4 if (it) is obtained on (the side of) the apogee,
otherwise multiply it by eight
- 5 minutes; the obliquity results. Then
- 6 seek the lines of latitude according to the
obliquity, and, the alidade
- 7 having been erected perpendicular to the equat-
ing line, note that the
- 8 desired line, that is, that line which is equal
to the obliquity,
- 9 on which division had (it) fallen of the divi-
sions of the edge
- 10 of the alidade. On that division make a mark.
Let this be the mark
- 11 of latitude. Then let ninety degrees be increased
by the adjusted center of each planet,
- 12 and the result we call the center of latitude.
Then let the
- 13 pointer of the alidade be placed along the center
of latitude, or opposite the center of latitude

نخند از اجزای حجره و نظر کنند که علامت عرض
بر کدام خط واقع شد. است از خطوط عرض عرض
ثالث آن کوکب بود پس اگر مرکز معدل آن کوکب
از سه برج کتر و یا از نه برج بیشتر باشد و خاصه
معدل آن شش برج بیشتر باشد عرض ثالث
ذمه جنوبی و عطارد شمالی و الا ذمه شمالی و
عطارد جنوبی بود اما عرض اول سفین مری
عضاده و ابرم مرکز عرض یا نظر گیرم مرکز عرض
نخند از اجزای حجره و نظر کنند که حرف عضاده
با اثره عرض آن کوکب بر کدام خط از خطوط
عرض تقاطع کرده است بر آن خط علامتی کنند
و عضاده را بر قطراستوار قلم کرده ایند نظر
کنند بر موضع تقاطع حرف عضاده با خط معلوم

f.26r

- 1 place it, from the divisions of the ring, and
- observe that the latitude mark
- 2 on which line of the latitude lines it has
- fallen, (this) will be the
- 3 third latitude of that planet. Then, if the
- adjusted center of that planet is
- 4 less than three signs, or more than nine signs,
- and the
- 5 adjusted anomaly more than six signs, the
- third latitude of
- 6 Venus will be south and (that of) Mercury north,
- and otherwise Venus will be north and
- 7 Mercury south. But (as for) the first latitude
- of the inferior (planets), let the pointer of
- the
- 8 alidade be put along the center of latitude,
- or opposite the center of latitude,
- 9 from the divisions of the ring, and observe
- that the edge of the alidade
- 10 has intersected with the latitude circle of
- that planet at which line of the lines of
- 11 latitude. On that line let a mark be made,
- 12 and, the alidade having been turned perpendi-
- cular to the equating diameter, observe
- 13 the place of intersection of the edge of the
- alidade with the marked line,

و بر آن موضع از حرف عضاده علامتی کنند
 این علامت عرض بود پس مری عضاده را افکا
 کنند بر مرکز عرض یا بر نظیر مرکز عرض علامت
 عرض بر که ام خط که واقع است از خطوط عرض
 عرض اول آن کوکب بود عرض اول هر سه
 و یا شمالی و قطار دجستونی باشد پس چون
 عرض ثلثه هر کوکب را معلوم کرده باشند
 اگر همه در جهت موافق باشند جمع کنند و الا عرضها
 موافق را جمع کرده تفاضل بین المجموع و الخالف
 بگیرند عرض معدل حاصل شود و جهت عرض معدل
 جهت مجموع بود در اول و جهت فضل
 بود در ثانی و الله اعلم **باب هشتم**
 در معرفت ابعاد کوکب از مرکز عالم بد آنکه بعد

f.26v

- 1 and at that place on the edge of the alidade
make a mark.
- 2 Let this be the latitude mark. Then let the
pointer of the alidade be returned
- 3 along(side) the center of latitude, or along
the opposite to the center of latitude, the
mark
- 4 of latitude, on whichever line of the latitude
lines (it) falls will be
- 5 the first latitude of that planet. The first
latitude of Venus is
- 6 always north, and Mercury south. Then, since
the
- 7 three latitudes of each planet have been found,
- 8 if all are in a similar direction, let them be
added, and otherwise,
- 9 like latitudes having been added, the difference
between the sum and the opposing (latitude)
- 10 is obtained (that) the adjusted latitude result,
and the direction of the true latitude is the
- 11 direction of the sum first and the direction
of the difference
- 12 secondly, but God knows better. CHAPTER EIGHT
- 13 On the Determination of the Distances of the
Planets from the Center of the Universe. Be
it known that the distance of the

علامت مرکز هر کوب از علامت اجتماعت
 آن کوب مساوی بعد مرکز جسم آن کوب است
 از مرکز عالم و بعد علامت مرکز هر کوب از مرکز
 صفحه بعد مرکز تدویر آن کوب است
 از مرکز عالم و این ابعاد معلوم است با جزئیات که
 نصف قطر صفحه شصت جز باشد از قبل سطران
 و عادت اهل این صناعت بر آن جاری شده
 است که تقدیر ابعاد کواکب متخیز و شمس با جز
 می کنند که نصف قطر حامل ایشان شصت باشد
 و تقدیر ابعاد قسم با جز اسی که نصف قطر حامل
 شصت باشد پس اگر خواهند که از این اجزاء
 معلوم آن اجزاء را که تقدیر بان می کنند
 بدانند هر یک از این اجزاء معلوم را در مقدار می گیرند

f.27r

- 1 mark of the center of each planet from the
 difference mark of
- 2 that planet is equal to the distance of the
 center of the body of that planet
- 3 from the center of the universe, and the distance
 of the center mark of each planet from the center
 of the
- 4 plate is (equal) to the amount of the distance
 of the epicycle center of that planet
- 5 from the center of the universe. And these
 distances are determined in such divisions
 that
- 6 half the plate diameter is sixty divisions from
 the sides of the two rulers.
- 7 And the custom of those who are of this art has
 thus become current,
- 8 that the evaluation of the distances of the
 planets and the sun is made with divisions
- 9 such that half the diameter(s) of their deferents
 shall be sixty.
- 10 And the evaluation of the distances of the moon
 are with divisions such that half the inclined
 diameter
- 11 is sixty. Then, if it is desired that from
 these
- 12 apparent divisions (the number of) those divi-
 sions which (are used to) evaluate them
- 13 be known, multiply each of these (values in)
 known divisions by a quantity

کنند که نسبت آن مقدار بایک جزء از اجزاء
 قطر بچون نسبت نصف قطر صغیر بود یا نصف
 قطر منقطه حاصل آن کوکب و ما این مقدار در هر
 کوکب استخراج کرد. در جدولی بنام و آن
 جدول اینست

۹	۸	۷	۶	۵	۴	۳	۲	۱
۱۱۱۱	۱۱۱۰	۱۱۰۰	۱۰۰۰	۱۰۰۰	۱۰۰۰	۱۰۰۰	۱۰۰۰	۱۰۰۰

و چون نصف قطر صغیر مقدار نصف قطر
 خارج مرکز شمس است چه محیط صغیر منقطه
 خارج مرکز شمس است که مرکز آن در محاله الا اولی
 و بمقدار نصف قطر حاصل است ابعاد معلومه از قبل
 مسطرین همان بعد بمقدار مطلوب بود و الله اعلم

f.27v

- 1 such that the ratio of this quantity to one
 2 division of the divisions of the
 3 diameter be the same as the ratio of half the
 4 plate diameter to half the
 5 diameter of the deferent heaven of that planet.
 And we, having extracted this quantity for
 each
 6 planet, have put it in a table, and that
 7 table is this:

☉	☾	♂	♂	♂	♀	♂
1;0,0	1;0,0	1;9,11	1;4,55	1;19,12	1;1,3	1;13,56

- 8 And since half the plate diameter is (equal)
 9 to the amount of half the diameter of the
 10 eccentric (orbit) of the sun, thus the plate
 11 circumference is the
 12 eccentric deferent of the sun, as was prescribed
 in the First Treatise,
 and (it) is to the amount of half the diameter
 of the inclined (orbit). The apparent distance,
 ascertained by means of the
 two rulers, that same distance will be the
 desired quantity, but God knows better.

باب ششم در معرفت رجعت و
استقامت و اقامت کوکب و اوقات آن
برای معرفت رجعت و استقامت و اقامت
تقوم کوکب را در ایام متوالیه حاصل کنند اگر
تراید باشد مستقیم بود و اگر متعاضد بود راجع
باشد و اگر نه تراید و نه متعاضد بود مستقیم باشد
اما معرفت مقامات رجعت و استقامت
و قستی که خاصه بعد از یک و دو مقامات رجعت
و استقامت که در جدول موضوع است برسد
بعد مرکز تدویر را از مرکز عالم با جبرزات ^{صغیر} و
بدانند و آن بعد علامت مرکز است از مرکز ^{صغیر}
و از آن بعد محفوظ خوانیم بعد از آن ^{بعد} و بعد
اقرب مرکز تدویر آن کوکب را با جبرزات ^{عظمی} بدانند

f.28r

- 1 CHAPTER NINE. On the Determination of Retro-
gradations
2 and Forward (Motions) and Stations of the Pla-
nets and their Times.
3 For the determination of retrogradations, and
forward motions, and stations,
4 extract the true longitude of the planet for
successive days. If
5 it (the true longitude) is increasing it (the
planet) will be (in) direct (motion), and if
it is decreasing it will be retrograde,
6 and if it is neither increasing nor decreasing
it will be stationary.
7 But, as for the determination of direct and
retrograde stations,
8 when the adjusted anomaly reaches the limits
of the retrograde
9 and direct stations, which are placed in the
table, ascertain the
10 distance of the center of the epicycle from
the center of the universe, in the divisions
of the diameter of the plate.
11 And this is the distance of the mark of the
center from the plate center,
12 and we call this the preserved distance. After
that, the greatest distance and the
13 least distance of the epicycle center of that
planet are determined in divisions of the
diameter

و طرین معرفت آن چنانست که عضادها را بر سطح
ای ذایقه را اند تا با اوج و حقیض گذرد بعد
نقطه تقاطع عضادها با منطقه این کوکب از مرکز
صفی در جانب اوج بعد ابعده بود و در جانب حقیض
بعده اقرب باشد مگر در عطاره که بعد اقرب او ابع
نست بلکه نقطه است از منطقه اش در تنبش
اوج و تقاض میان بعد ابعده و بعد اقرب کوکب
و تقاض بنهار اوج است که نصف قطر صغیری
شخصت باشد در جدول نهادیم که عند الحاق
الذایقه از دهن و عمل محاج نشوند و آن جدول است

وایک مرتبہ دعا پڑھا بعد دعا

[illegible]

f.28v

- 1 The method of determining that is thus: that
the alidade is turned
- 2 opposite until it passes through the apogee
and perigee. The distance of the
- 3 point of intersection of the alidade with the
deferent of that planet from the center of the
- 4 plate on the side of the apogee will be the
farthest distance, and on the side of the
- 5 perigee is the
nearest distance, except for Mercury, for
which the nearest distance
- 6 is not this, but it is a point of its deferent
(found by) dividing (its deferent) into three
parts (from the)
- 7 apogee. And the differences between the
farthest distance and the nearest distance
*is obtained. And the greatest and least
distances* of the planets
- 8 and the differences between the two in divi-
sions such that half the diameter of the plate
shall be
- 9 sixty, we have put in a table that, when
needed,
- 10 it may be taken from there. And that table
is this:

11	Distances	♂	♂	♂	♀	♂	
12	Farthest distance	55;0	58;0	50;0	60;0	56;0	Annulled
13	Nearest distance	49;4	52;56	40;54	57;56	45;6	
14	Difference	5;56	5;4	9;6	2;4	10;54	

* Marginal correction.

پس بعد محفوظ را از بعد انقصان کنند در علوی و
 در سفلی و بعد از قب عطار در از بعد محفوظ نقصان
 کنند و باقی را در مابین حدود مقامات و منتهیات
 ضرب کنند و آن در جدول موضوع است و حاصل
 ضرب را بر تفاضل سن البعد من قسمت کنند و خارج قسمت

الکواکب	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	الکواکب	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	الکواکب	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم	بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

برسد اجزای حدود مقامات رجعت زناده کنند
 تا مقام رجعت حاصل شود و مقام رجعت را از دور
 نقصان کنند مقام استقامت باقی ماند یا خارج
 قسمت را از منتهای حدود مقامات استقامت

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم

TRANSLATION

f.29r

- 1 Then subtract the preserved distance from the
farthest distance in (the case of) the superior
(planets) and
- 2 Venus, and the nearest distance of Mercury,
subtract it from the preserved distance.
- 3 And the remainder multiply between the begin-
ning of the limits of the stations and their
ends.
- 4 And that is placed in the table. And the
- 5 product is to be divided by the difference
between the two distances, and the quotient,

6	The Planets	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐
7	Beginning of the limits of the retrograde sta- tions and all the begin- ning of the limits of the direct (stations).	3°22;45	4°7;6	5°7;14	5°15;45	4°24;29
8	End of the limits of the retrograde sta- tions.	3°25;29	4°10;11	5°18;48	5°18;27	4°27;14
9	The difference between the two.	2;44	3;5	11;34	2;42	2;45

- 10 increase by the beginning of the limits of the
retrograde stations,
- 11 so that the retrograde station result. And if
the retrograde station is subtracted from a
revolution;
- 12 the direct station will remain. Or (else)
the
- 13 quotient is subtracted from the ends of the
limits of the direct station

نقصان کنند با مقام استقامت حاصل شود مقام
استقامت ثانی و در نقصان کنند مقام رجعت ثانی
مانند مقام رجعت با مقام اول و مقام استقامت
مقام ثانی خوانند پس هرگاه که خاصه معذله از مقام
اول بگذرد و کوچک راجع شود و چون از مقام ثانی
بگذرد و مستقیم شود و اگر در مقام اول بود مستقیم
رجعت بود و در مقام ثانی مستقیم استقامت باشد
و درین رایغرا از استقامت بنود اما اگر کوچک مستقیم
بود و خواستیم بدانیم که کی راجع می شود خاصه معذله
را از مقام اول نقصان کنیم و پاشی را بر حرکت
یکدوزه خاصه قسمت کنند خارج قسمت مدتی باشد
که بعد از آن مدت راجع خواهند شد و اگر راجع بود
و وقت استقامتش خواهند خاصه معذله را از مقام

TRANSLATION

f.29v

- 1 so that the direct station result. The
- 2 direct station is subtracted from a revolution;
the retrograde station will remain.
- 3 And the retrograde station is called the first
station; the direct station the
- 4 second station. So, whenever the adjusted
anomaly passes the station,
- 5 the planet will become retrograde, and if it
passes the second station
- 6 it will become direct. And if it is in the
first station its stance will be
- 7 retrograde, and in the second station its stance
will be direct.
- 8 But the two luminaries (i.e. the sun and the
moon) will never be (in) other than direct
(motion). However, if a planet is direct
- 9 and we want to know when it will become retro-
grade, the adjusted anomaly is subtracted
- 10 from the (value at) first station, and the
remainder is divided by the
- 11 diurnal motion of the anomaly. The quotient
will be such a time
- 12 that after that time the retrogradation will
occur. And if it is retrograde
- 13 and the time until it becomes direct is required,
the adjusted anomaly having been subtracted
from the (value at)

ثانی نقصان کرده. همان عمل کنند و الله اعلم
باب دهم در معرفت نطقات
اوجی و شد ویزی آفتاب و دیگر که اکبر در افلاک
خارج مرکز چهار نطق بود بیدار نطق اول اوج
باشد و بیدار نطق سیم حنیض و ابا بیدار دوم
و چهارم اگر عجب بعد کردند ابا بود که بعد آفتاب
با مرکز تند ویر از مرکز عالم و مرکز خارج مرکز متساوی
بود و اگر عجب که ندانجا بود که سیر آفتاب
نه سریع بود و نه بطی و غیر آفتاب را از زیارات
در افلاک تدویر هم چهار نطق بود بیدار اول و سیم
دو و حنیض مرئی و بیدار و دوم و چهارم عجب
بعدانجا بود که بعد کوکب و مرکز تند ویر از مرکز عالم
متساوی باشد و عجب سیر انجا بود که سیر عجب

f.30r

- 1 second station, perform the same operation,
but God knows better.
- 2 CHAPTER TEN. On the Knowledge of
- 3 Apogee and Epicycle Sectors. The sun and the
other planets in the
- 4 eccentric orbits have four sectors. The
beginning of the first sector is the apogee,
- 5 and the beginning of the third sector is the
perigee. But (as for) the beginning of the
second sector
- 6 and the fourth (sector), if it is (reckoned)
on the basis of distance it will be there
where the distance(s) of the sun
- 7 or of the epicycle center from the center of
the universe and from the eccentric center
are equal.
- 8 But if it is (reckoned) on the basis of move-
ment, it will be there where the sun's movement
would
- 9 not be speedy and not slow. And other than
the sun, of the planets,
- 10 in the epicycle there are also four sectors.
The beginning of the first and third
- 11 will be the apparent epicyclic apogee and
perigee, and the beginning of the second and
fourth, according to
- 12 distance will be there where the distance of
the planet and the center of the epicycle from
the center of the universe
- 13 are equal. And according to movement (it)
will be there where the movement, according
to the center,

اگر تمام باشد و این هر دو با اختلاف بعد مرکز بود و مرکز اول از مرکز
 عالم مختلف شوند و اما بسازی نقاط اوجی را بحسب
 بعد محبت شهرش از ربع اخذ کرده بر نقطه هر کوکب
 علامات کردیم پس نقاط اوجی را از قبل علامات
 بدانند و اما نقاط تدویری را چون بر صفحه علامت
 مرکز و اختلاف طولی کرده بایستند حرف عضاد
 و یا بر علامت مرکز ننهند و نظر کنند بعلامت اختلاف
 اگر بر همین کسی که مواجه عضاده باشد بحیثیتی که
 علامت مرکز محاذی را پس آن کس بود واقع و چنانچه
 اگر بعد علامت مرکز از علامت اکثر بود از بعد علامت
 مرکز از مرکز صفحه کوکب در نقاط اول باشد و اگر اقل
 باشد و ثانی بود و اگر علامت اختلاف طولی از
 فیسار آن کس باشد و بعد علامت مرکز از علامت

f.30v

- 1 is alone (i.e., the only one). And both of
- these, because of the difference in distance
- of the epicycle center from the center of the
- 2 universe, differ. And we, having taken from
- the (Khāqānī) Zīj the beginnings of the apogee
- sectors (reckoned) according to
- 3 distance, in order that they be known, we made
- on the deferent of every planet
- 4 some marks. So the apogee sectors can be
- determined by means of the marks.
- 5 As for the epicyclic sectors, if on the plate
- a mark of the
- 6 center and of the longitudinal difference had
- been made, the edge of the alidade
- 7 is put along the mark of the center, and look
- along to the difference mark.
- 8 If it is on the right of someone who is facing
- the alidade under the condition that
- 9 the mark of the center fall opposite the head
- of that person, and hence
- 10 if the distance of the center mark from the
- [difference]* mark is larger than the distance
- of the
- 11 center mark from the center of the plate, the
- planet must be in the first sector, and if it
- is less,
- 12 it will be in the second. And if the mark of
- longitudinal difference is on the
- 13 left of that person, and the distance of the
- center mark from the mark of the

*The word اختلاف is lacking in the text.

اختلاف کم از بعد علامت مرکز از مرکز صحتی بود در
 نطق ثالث بود و اگر بیشتر باشد در نطق رابع
 باشد و هرگاه که کوکب در نطق اول و دوم باشد
 زاید بود در عدد حساب و در نطق سیم و چهارم
 ناقص بود و حال قمر بر عکس این باشد در زیادت
 و نقصان حساب و اگر کوکب در نطق اول و
 چهارم باشد ناقص بود در عظم و نور و اگر در دوم
 و سوم باشد زاید باشد اما زیادت و نقصان نور
 ماه بحسب بعد او باشد از آفتاب ککن در عظم
 مانند دیگر کوکب بود و الله اعلم باب
 یازدهم در معرفت خسوف ماه به استقبال حقیقی
 که در شب باشد یا در روز واقع شود
 کم از دو ساعت و چهار دقیقه گذشته از اول روز

f.31r

- 1 difference is less than the distance of the
center mark from the center of the plate, it
will be
- 2 in the third sector, and if it is more it will
be in the fourth sector.
- 3 And whenever the planet is in the first and
second sectors it will be
- 4 increasing in the number of the computation,
and in the third and fourth sectors it will be
- 5 decreasing. But the condition of the moon is
opposite this in the increase
- 6 and decrease of the computation. And if the
planet is in the first or
- 7 fourth sector it will be decreased in magnitude
and light, but if it is in the second
- 8 or third it must be increased. But as for the
increase and lessening in light of the
- 9 moon, it will be according to its distance from
the sun, but in magnitude
- 10 it is like the other planets, but God knows
better. CHAPTER
- 11 ELEVEN. On the Determination of Lunar Eclipses.
(At) any true opposition
- 12 which is in the night or which falls on (either
of) the two sides of the day,
- 13 less than two hours and four minutes having
passed from the first of the day

یا مانند این است روز و عرض قمر کمتر از
 مقدار مجموع قطرها و نصف قطر دایره ظل
 بود خسوف ممکن بود چه اگر مقدار مجموع نصف
 قطر باشد قمر ماس دایره ظل شود و مخفف
 گردد و اگر زیاد بر مجموع نصف قطر باشد بود
 خسوف ممکن نباشد پس اگر بعد قمر از اوجی هم
 العقبتین اکثر از دوازده درجه باشد خسوف
 ممکن نخواهد بود و اگر کمتر دوازده درجه و بیشتر
 از بیست و نه دقیقه باشد بسبب مخفی شدن
 گرد و و اگر کمتر از این باشد خسوف کلی واقع شود
 پس هرگاه که معلوم شود که خسوف واقع خواهد شد
 حرف مضاده بر ایوان حل کنند و مطابق عرض
 قمر اوجات طرح کنند و بعد از این درجات

f.31v

- 1 or remaining from the end of the day, and the
- moon's latitude being less than the
- 2 amount of the sum of [half]* the diameter of
- the moon and half the diameter of the shadow
- circle,
- 3 a lunar eclipse is possible. Otherwise, if
- the amount of the sum is half the
- 4 two diameters the moon will be tangent to the
- shadow circle, and a lunar eclipse
- 5 will not occur. And if it is greater than the
- sum of half the two diameters a
- 6 lunar eclipse will not be possible. So if
- the distance of the moon from one of the
- 7 two nodes is greater than twelve degrees a
- lunar eclipse
- 8 will not be possible, but if it is less than
- twelve degrees and [the lunar latitude at
- conjunction]* more
- 9 than twenty-nine minutes a partial lunar eclipse
- will
- 10 occur, and if it is less than this a total
- lunar eclipse will befall.
- 11 So, any time it become known that a lunar
- eclipse is to befall, put the
- 12 edge of the alidade along the first of Aries
- and elevate the minutes of the moon's latitude
- 13 into degrees, and to the amount of these

*Lacking in the text.

مرفوعه از اجزاء قطر برصفحه علامتی کنند
و مری عضاده را حرکت دهند تا ماحد انقلابین آید
و باید که حرف عضاده بجانب علامت باشد
و حرف سطره را برین علامت ننند بخشیقی
که علامت خضوف که بر سطره است برین علامت
واقع شود و بر این یک سطره که قرب علامت
مکت است بحرف عضاده افتد لابد از حرف
سطره و عضاده زاویه حادث شود پس
نقطه کنند که میان خود زاویه و مرکز عضاده چند
است از اجزاء عضاده آنچه باشد تضعیف کنند
پس به یک مرتبه منخط گیرند معنی هر درجه را در واقع
شمارند آنچه حاصل شوند ساعات سقوط بود و اگر
خضوف کلی باشد آنچه علامت خضوف

f.32r

- 1 elevated degrees in divisions of the diameter
on the plate make a mark.
- 2 And the pointer of the alidade is moved until
it reaches one of the two solstices,
- 3 and it is necessary that the edge of the alidade
be beside the mark.
- 4 And the edge of the ruler is put alongside this
mark in such fashion that
- 5 the lunar eclipse mark, which is on the ruler,
fall on this mark,
- 6 and the other head of the ruler, which is near
the mark of
- 7 first totality, fall on the edge of the alidade.
Without fail, from the edge of the
- 8 ruler and the alidade an angle is formed. So
- 9 observe that between the vertex of the angle
and the center of the alidade how many
- 10 of the divisions of the alidade there are. What-
ever it is, double it,
- 11 then depress it one (sexagesimal) place, i.e.,
count each degree a minute.
- 12 That which results is the time of immersion.
And if the lunar
- 13 eclipse is total, that which was done with the
lunar eclipse mark

کرده است بعلامت گشت کنند یا ساعات
گشت معلوم کرده پس ساعات استقبال
را در پنج موضع هند از اول ساعات سقوط در
از ثانی ساعات گشت را بیک ساعت و ثانی
را بجایش بگذارند و بر رابع ساعات گشت
و پنج ساعات ساعات سقوط را زیاده کنند تا از اول
ساعات بدو خسوف و از ثانی بدو گشت
و از ثالث وسط خسوف و از رابع بدو انجلا
و از خامس تمام انجلا حاصل گردد و اگر خسوف
کلی بود ساعات استقبال را در پنج
موضع گذارند حاصل از اول ساعات بدو
خسوف و از ثانی وسط خسوف و از ثالث
تمام خسوف باشد سن میل حرم غرض قرا

f.32v

- 1 do it with the mark of (first) totality [so
that]* the hours of
- 2 totality can be ascertained. Then the time of
opposition,
- 3 put it in five places: from the first subtract
the time of immersion and
- 4 from the second the time of totality, and the
third, put it in
- 5 its (previous?) place, to the fourth add the
time of totality,
- 6 and to the fifth the time of immersion, so
that from the first the
- 7 time of beginning of the lunar eclipse, and
from the second the beginning of totality,
- 8 and from the third the middle of the lunar
eclipse, and from the fourth the beginning
of clearance,
- 9 and from the fifth the end of clearance result.
But if the lunar eclipse
- 10 is not total the time of opposition is put
in three
- 11 places. The result from the first will be the
time of the beginning of the lunar
- 12 eclipse, and from the second the middle of the
lunar eclipse, and from the third the
- 13 end of the lunar eclipse. Then, according to
the elevate of the lunar latitude,

*MS. has b for c .

از اجزاء مسطره ازان را دس که بفرست علامت
کشت است بش قمر اصابع خسوف چو پند
وازان و در مسطره اصابع منخفه قمر را بداند
و الله اعلم باب دوازدهم
در معرفت کسوف افتاب اگر اجتماع
در روز یا در یکی از دو طرف شب واقع شود
و جزو اجتماع بعد از راس و پیش از دنب
و بعد از آن جزو از عقده کمتر از شانزده درجه
باشد یا پیش از داس و بعد از آن جزو از عقده کمتر
از شانزده درجه باشد یا پیش از داس
و بعد از دنب باشد و بعد از آن جزو از عقده کم از هفت
درجه بود کسوف ممکن باشد پس هرگاه
که کسوف ممکن باشد بازا جزو اجتماع و ساعت

f.33r

- 1 in divisions of the ruler, from that head which
- 2 is in the vicinity of the mark of
- 3 totality, in front of the division, the digits
- 4 are sought,
- 5 and from that face of the ruler the lunar
- 6 eclipse digits are ascertained,
- 7 but God knows better. CHAPTER TWELVE.
- 8 On the Determination of Solar Eclipses. If a
- 9 conjunction befalls
- 10 during the day or on one of the two sides of
- 11 the night,
- 12 and the part of the conjunction (is) after
- 13 the head (i.e. ascending node) and before the
- 14 tail (i.e. descending node),
- 15 and the distance of that part from the node is
- 16 less than sixteen degrees;
- 17 or before the head, and after {that part from
- 18 the node (is) less
- 19 than sixteen degrees; or before the head
- 20 and after}* the tail and the distance of the
- 21 part from the node is less than seven
- 22 degrees, a solar eclipse is possible. So,
- 23 whenever a solar
- 24 eclipse is possible, opposite the part of the
- 25 conjunction and the hours of the

* Passage in braces is repeated also in the text.

[illegible]

TRANSLATION

£.33v

(Table of Adjusted Lunar Parallax Components)

		Σ	R	T	Δ	Π	Ψ	Φ	Θ
		6:57	6:48	6:16	6:0	5:[44]	5:[12]	5:3	
		(Hour) of Given Longitude Difference							(Hour) of Given Longitude Difference
P.M.	7	1,41 28	1,48 20	1,53 9					7
	6	1,41 27	1,47 18	1,53 9	1,51 4	1,54 6	1,48 12		6
	5	1,40 26	1,45 16	1,51 8	1,50 4	1,53 7	1,48 13	1,45 22	5
	4	1,37 21	1,42 13	1,47 7	1,46 5	1,51 5	1,47 16	1,42 26	4 A.M.
	3	1,28 16	1,33 9	1,36 6	1,47 7	1,47 10	1,45 20	1,30 30	3
	2	1,7 11	1,11 7	1,20 6	1,34 8	1,36 15	1,30 26	1,12 35	2
	1	0,37 7	0,41 6	0,50 8	1,30 13	1,16 22	1,7 31	0,40 38	1
Noon		0,0 5	0,7 8	0,15 14	0,32 20	0,13 29	0,19 37	0,40 41	Noon
A.M.	1	0,37 7	0,48 12	0,13 20	0,0 28	0,0 36	0,11 40	0,40 38	1
	2	1,7 11	0,58 19	0,42 26	0,30 35	0,30 37	0,45 40	1,12 35	2
	3	1,28 16	1,16 24	0,58 32	0,51 39	0,53 38	1,12 39	1,30 30	3
	4	1,37 21	1,18 29	1,8 36	1,5 40	1,8 38	1,21 36	1,46 26	4 P.M.
	5	1,40 23	1,21 33	1,10 38	1,7 41	1,10 39	1,13 34	1,43 22	5
	6	1,41 26	1,23 35	1,11 39	1,8 42	1,12 39	1,24 33		6
	7	1,41 28	1,24 36	1,12 40					7
		Σ	[II]	[B]	[r]	[ΔE]	[ΔC]	Θ	

(Restorations have been made by comparison with [23], f.164v, and consideration of tabular differences.)

بعد از جدول اختلاف ساعات هر یک
از ساعات اختلاف داخل عرض را
بگیرند و ساعات اختلاف بعد را بر ساعات
اجتماع افزایند اگر اجتماع غرضی بود و از آن
اجتماع بکاهند اگر شریقی باشد یا ساعات
کسوف حاصل شود بعد از این عرض قسم
در وسط کسوف حاصل کنند اگر شمالی تفاضل
میان او و میان اختلاف و اگر جنوبی باقی
جمع کنند یا غرضی مرئی حاصل شود اقل از شمس
و سه دقیقه باشد منکشف شود و الا باطل و چون
منکشف شود بر عرض مرئی و علامت کسوف
عمل کنند چنانچه بر عرض و علامت منکشف
کرد. بودند یا ساعات بد و کسوف و وسط

TRANSLATION

f.34r

- 1 distance from the table of the difference of
hours (parallax), each one
- 2 of the hours of difference and the difference
of latitude,
- 3 obtain them. And the hours of difference of
distance, add (them) to the time of the conjunc-
tion
- 4 if the conjunction is westerly, and subtract
them from the time of the
- 5 conjunction if it is easterly, so that the
time of the middle of the solar
- 6 eclipse result. After that, the lunar latitude
7 at the middle of the solar eclipse is obtained;
if (it is) northerly (take) the difference
- 8 between it and between the difference, and if
it is southerly they are
- 9 added, so that the apparent latitude result.
(If it is) less than thirty-
- 10 three minutes a solar eclipse will occur, and
otherwise not. And when it is to be
- 11 eclipsed, do with the apparent latitude and
the mark of the solar eclipse
- 12 as had been done with the lunar latitude and
the lunar eclipse mark
- 13 so that the times of the beginning of the solar
eclipse and the middle

و وسط کسوف و اکلا معلوم شود و اصابع تحفه
 همچو اصابع تحفه بدانند و معرفت ساعات
 اجتماع و استقبال در خانه بنا بدانند الله تعالی
 باب سیزدهم در معرفت وسط تحول
 از قبل تقویم شمس در وقت بین و ساعات
 بعد تحول مری عضاده را بر مثل تقویم شمس تحفه
 در وقت مفروض از اجزاء حجره و حرف سطره
 را بر مرکز شعاع که رانده موازی عضاده سازند
 و بر موضع تقاطع حرف سطره محیط صغیر
 علامتی کنند پس حرف عضاده را بر این علامت
 نهند موضع مری عضاده از اجزاء حجره و وسط
 تحول بود پس استخراج وسط کنند در نصف
 النهار مقدم بر وقت عروض و این وسط را

f.34v

- 1 and the middle* of the solar eclipse and
clearance become known. And the solar
eclipse digits
- 2 are determined like the lunar eclipse digits.
And the determination of the hours of
- 3 conjunction and opposition, let it come in
the conclusion, if God will, He is exalted!
- 4 CHAPTER THIRTEEN. On the Determination of the
Mean of Transfer
- 5 by Means of the True Longitude of the Sun at
a Given Time, and the Hours
- 6 after the Transfer. The pointer of the alidade
is put according to the true longitude of the
sun
- 7 at the assumed time on the divisions of the
ring, and the edge of the ruler having been
put
- 8 along the fictitious center, make it parallel
to the alidade.
- 9 And at the place of intersection of the edge
of the ruler with the circumference of the
plate let a
- 10 mark be made. Then the edge of the alidade
is put along this mark;
- 11 the place of the pointer of the alidade in
divisions of the ring will be the mean of
- 12 transfer. Then the mean is extracted on the
approaching
- 13 noon at the assumed time, and this mean,

* دوسٹ is repeated from the previous page.

از وسط تحول که بنده بانی را بر حرکت یک ساعت
وسط قسمت کنند خارج قسمت بعد تحول از نصف
النهان مقدم باشد یا **باب** چهارم در رسم
در معرفت ارتفاع حقیقی از مری و معرفت
ارتفاع مری از حقیقی و اختلاف سطره
بدایره ارتفاع مری عضاده را بر اول سرطان ننهند
و از مرکز بجانب اول سرطان بجهت قمری که
و دوقیقه بگیرند از اجزاء عضاده و بجهت
شمس اگر آلت بزرگ باشد پیشتر که از دوقیقه
بگیرند و برای رسم دوقیقه بگیرند و عند المنق
علامت کنند بر صفحه سوا این را علامت سطره
خوانیم پس بر حرف عضاده بر مثل بعد شمس
و با قمر از مرکز عالم در مثل نصف بعد شمس

f.35r

- 1 let it be subtracted from the mean of transfer;
 the remainder is divided by the motion (in)
 one mean hour.
- 2 The quotient will be the distance of the trans-
 fer from the coming
- 3 noon. CHAPTER FOURTEEN.
- 4 On the Determination of the True Altitude from
 the Apparent and the Determination of the
- 5 Apparent Altitude from the True, and the [Paral-
 lax]*
- 6 in the Altitude Circle. The pointer of the
 alidade is placed at the first of Cancer,
- 7 and from the center, on the side of the first
 of Cancer in the case of the moon, one division
- 8 and two minutes is taken of the divisions of
 the alidade, and in the case of the
- 9 sun, if the instrument is large, a little more
 than two minutes
- 10 is taken. And for Venus two minutes is taken,
 and near the end
- 11 a mark is made on the plate, and we call this
 the mark of [parallax]*.
- 12 Then, on the edge of the alidade, according to
 the distance of the sun
- 13 or of the moon from the center of the universe,
 and according to half the distance of Venus

* MS. has مسطر ruler, for منظر.

از مرکز عالم علامت کنند و ما این را علامت
کوکب نامیم پس اگر ارتفاع مری معلوم باشد
و خواهند که ارتفاع حقیقی بدانند مری عضاده را
از اول حل بر توانی بقدر ارتفاع مری بگردانند
و حرف میطره را بعلامت میطره گذرانند و باقی
عضاده گردانند و بر صیغه بقرب علامت کوکب
بر حرف میطره خطی کشند پس عضاده را بگردانند
تا علامت کوکب بدین خط واقع شود بعد مری
عضاده از اول حل ارتفاع حقیقی او کوکب
باشد و فاضل بین الارتفاعین اختلاف خط
آن بود بدایره ارتفاع و اگر ارتفاع حقیقی
معلوم باشد و ارتفاع مری خواهند مری عضاده
را بر توانی از اول حل بقدر ارتفاع حقیقی

f.35v

- 1 from the center of the universe a mark is
- 2 made, and we call this the (parallax)
- 3 mark of the planet. Then, if the apparent
- 4 altitude is known
- 5 and it is desired to ascertain the true longi-
- 6 tude, the pointer of the alidade is turned
- 7 from the first of Aries along the succession
- 8 (of the zodiacal signs) by the amount of the
- 9 apparent altitude,
- 10 and, the edge of the ruler having been put
- 11 along the parallax mark, turn it parallel to
- 12 the
- 13 alidade, and on the plate at the planet's
- 14 mark,
- 15 a line is drawn alongside the edge of the
- 16 ruler. Then the alidade is turned
- 17 until the mark of the planet falls along this
- 18 line, and the distance of the pointer of the
- 19 alidade from the first of Aries is the true
- 20 altitude of [that]* planet.
- 21 And the difference between the two altitudes
- 22 is its parallax
- 23 in the circle of altitude. And if the true
- 24 altitude
- 25 is known and the apparent altitude is wanted,
- 26 the pointer of the alidade is turned
- 27 in the direction (of the signs) from the first
- 28 of Aries to the amount of the true altitude.

*For ar read آن.

و بر موع علامت کوکب که بر عضاد و مکر ۶۰
بود بر صیفه علامت کندی پس حرف سطر را
با این علامت و علامت منظر گذرانند و عضاد و با
موازی سطر کردند بعد مری عضاد و از اول
حل ارتفاع مری آن کوکب باشد و الله اعلم
باب پانزدهم در معرفت تعدیل الايام
بلیالیها اهل این صناعت شبانه روزی حقیقه
را از نصف النهار گیرند تا نصف النهار تا
با اختلاف بقاع مختلف نشود پس مقدار
شبانه روز حقیقه و دوری باشد از معدل النهار
یا مطالع الکواکب در آن شبانه روز حرکت
کند بخط استوانه حرکت آفتاب مختلف است
چه گاهی بطی السیرت و گاهی سریع السیر

f.36r

- 1 and at the place of the mark of the planet,
which had been made on the alidade,
- 2 a mark is made on the plate. Then the edge of
the ruler is placed
- 3 along this mark and the mark of parallax, and
the alidade is turned
- 4 parallel to the ruler. The distance of the
pointer of the alidade from the first of
- 5 Aries is the apparent altitude of that planet,
but God knows better.
- 6 CHAPTER FIFTEEN. On the Determination of the
Equation of
- 7 Time. Those having to do with this art take
the true day (nychthemeron)
- 8 from noon to noon so that
- 9 in the difference of locality there will be
no differing. So let the amount of the
- 10 true day be a rotation of the celestial equa-
tor (together)
- 11 with the rising (time) of that (arc through)
which the sun in that day moves with respect
to the (celestial)
- 12 equator. And the motion of the sun is diffe-
rent (i.e., variable),
- 13 since sometimes it is slow-travelling and
sometimes fast-travelling,

و بر مطالع اجزاء ملک البروج مساوی نیست
پس معادیر ایام حقیقی مختلف باشد نسبت
این هر دو تفاوت و اهل حساب می آیند باین
مساوی الاقدار جهت معرفت حرکات وسط
کواکب غیر این پس آن زیاده بر دور را مساوی
سیر یکروزه وسط آفتاب گرفتند تا ایام سال
شکافی بکشند و این ایام مساوی را ایام
وسطی خوانند و معادیر آن دوری باشد از معدل
النهار ما قوسی مساوی سیر یکروزه وسط آفتاب
و تفاوت میان این ایام و ایام حقیقی را تعدیل
الایام بلیا می خوانند پس بجهت معرفت تعدیل
الایام بلیا لغو نمیشد و وسطش را حاصل
کنند در وقت مغرب پس بر وسط شمس

TRANSLATION

f.36v

- 1 and also the rising (times) of the divisions
of the zodiac are not equal.
- 2 So the amounts of the true days are different
with respect to
- 3 both differences, and those concerned with
computation need days
- 4 equal in amount for the knowledge of mean
motions of
- 5 planets, and for (problems) other than that.
So that excess over a revolution has been
taken equal to the
- 6 travel in one day of the mean sun, so that
the days of the year be
- 7 sufficient, and these equal days are called
- 8 mean days. And the amounts of (each of) these
is a rotation of the celestial
- 9 equator (together) with an arc equal to the
travel of the mean sun in one day,
- 10 and the difference between these days and the
true days is called the equation of
- 11 time. So, with regard to the determination of
the equation of
- 12 time, the true longitude of the sun and its
mean is obtained
- 13 at the assumed time. Then to the sun's mean
three degrees

در چهار وقت و قیقه و آنست که تا نیمه زیادت
کنند و فضل مجموع این را بر مطلق تقویم شمس بگیرند
پس برای هر درجه از این فضل چهار دقیقه از وقت
ساعات و برای هر سه درجه و قیقه از وقت فضل
یک دقیقه از ساعات و برای هر دقیقه از وقت
فضل چهار ثانیه بگیرند مجموع و قیوم و ثوانی ساعات
تعدیل الایام بلیا لها بود از ایام و ساعات جنبشی
نقصان کنند ایام وسطی مانند و اندک اعظم
خاتمه در عمل پنج اتصالات هر یک از این
عدل و بعد ماضی و ساعات نصف النهار و ساعات
لیل را بداند پس از سطره ا طول بقدر ساعات
نصف النهار قرار کند و در آن سطره لیل را که
در دفتر نیست حاوی ساعات نصف النهار

TRANSLATION

f.37r

- 1 and fifty-seven minutes and thirty seconds
is added,
- 2 and the excess of the sum of this over the
(right) ascension of the sun is obtained.
- 3 Then, for each degree (of arc) of this excess
four minutes of the
- 4 minutes of hours are taken, and for each ten
minutes of the minutes of the excess (take)
- 5 one minute of hours, and for each minute of
the minutes of the
- 6 excess four seconds are taken. The sum of
the minutes and seconds of the hours will be
the
- 7 equation of time. From the true days and
hours
- 8 decrease them, the mean days will remain, but
God knows better.
- 9 CONCLUSION. On the Operation of the Plate of
Conjunctions. Each one: the daily rate,
- 10 and the past distance, and the time of noon,
and the duration of
- 11 night, should be ascertained. Then extend
the longer ruler to the amount of the time
of
- 12 noon, and the head of the night ruler, which
is
- 13 in the second trough, is put opposite the
duration of the day

کنند از اجراء کاشته لوح تا بعد از اسطره یوم
از راه اسطره لیل بقدر ساعات منتهی گردد
اسطره غدا را بر مثل ساعات لیل کنند از اسطره
لیل پس زانو نه قاعه مجاذی ساعات نصف لیل
یوم آیند و بگردان اسطره غدا را و آنرا از اسطره
یوم مجاذی اسطره لیل است بکرم تر باشد بعد از آن
حرف اسطره بدیر با خط را مثل منبت مدال از
اجراء سرات بگردانند و اکشت ماسر قلم را بر مثل منبت
ماضی از اجراء سرات نهند و بر خطی که از آن خبر
خارج شده است برانند با حرف اسطره یا خط
پس بخطی که از بنجا با جواز ساعات و اجزاء اسطره لای
سه کانه فزونی رود و آیند و نظر کنند که آن
خط از خطی که در حکم محو است برگرداند و قیست

TRANSLATION

f.37v

- 1 on the divisions of the margin of the plate so
- 2 that the distance of the head of the day ruler
- 3 from the head of the night ruler is made (equal
- 4 to) the amount of the hours of the day. And
- 5 the next-day ruler is put according to the
- 6 hours of the night on the
- 7 night ruler. Then the right angle will be
- 8 opposite the hours of noon
- 9 of the coming day on the next-day ruler. And
- 10 that which of the
- 11 day ruler is opposite the night ruler let it
- 12 be disregarded. After that, the
- 13 edge of the turning ruler or thread is placed
- 14 according to the daily motion (or rate) in
- 15 the
- 16 divisions of travel, and the finger or pen-
- 17 point is placed according to the
- 18 past distance of the divisions of travel, and
- 19 is run along the line
- 20 extending from that division until (it reaches)
- 21 the edge of the ruler or thread.
- 22 Then descend along the line which runs from
- 23 here into the divisions of the hours and the
- 24 divisions of the
- 25 three-fold rulers. And note that that
- 26 line, except for the segment which is (to be)
- 27 disregarded, falls along which minute

از که ام ساعات از یکدم سطره دایره است
آن ساعت اتصال از اول یوم یا اول لیل یا
از یوم آیند و موقع این خط از اجزای کاشیه
ساعات بعد از نصف النهار معلوم
و اگر بعد از ساعات اتصال از یوم یا لیل
یا نصف النهار معلوم باشد و
بعد مجهول بکشد
این عمل بعد از

بدانند

والله اعلم

م



T R A N S L A T I O N

f.38r

- 1 of which hour and which ruler.
- 2 This is the hour of conjunction from the
 first (hour) of the day or the first (hour)
 of the night
- 3 or of the coming day. And the place of that
 line on the divisions of the edge
- 4 is the hours of the distance from the previous
 noon.
- 5 And if the beginning of the hours of the con-
 junction from the day or the night
- 6 or noon is known, and
- 7 the distance unknown, by the reverse
- 8 of this operation the distance

- 9 may be ascertained,

- 10 but God knows better.

- 11 Finished.



C O M M E N T A R Y

References to the text and translation give the folio and line numbers of the Persian manuscript. Numbers enclosed in square brackets are references to the bibliography which begins on page 251.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

1. The Introduction of the Manuscript (f. 2v:1 - 4v:4)

Folios 2v-4v are prefatory to the main body of the work, and the style and arrangement are typical of introductions to medieval Islamic scientific books. In contrast to the bald and unadorned language of the text proper these first passages are written in rhymed prose, in a florid and elaborate style. As was customary, the author chooses his figures of speech from the subject matter of his treatise, here astronomy.

The opening lines (f. 2v:1-10) are an invocation to God embellished with poetic allusions to the celestial portions of His creation. Assisted by a quotation from the Qur'ān, the author then modulates into a short (f. 2v:11 - 3r:2) panegyric on the Prophet.

Having thus paid his respects to established religion the theme is next announced - to enable the reader to solve astronomical problems without elaborate computation. The inventor on whom the anonymous author depends for his solution is named with fulsome praise, together with his two instruments.

The last section of the introduction is (f. 3v:13 - 4v:4) a dedication to the patron, the Ottoman Sultan Bayazid II (1447-1512), and a closing plea for forgiveness should the reader detect mistakes.

There follows (f. 4v:6 - 5v:7) a table of contents, after which the exposition proper begins.

2. Construction of the Disk and Ring (f. 5v:9 - 7r:1)

These two members together make up a large, 360° protractor, to be used for laying off all the angular distances needed in the subsequent operation of the instrument. The distinguishing peculiarity of this protractor, aside from its size, is the fact that its interior, the plate, is to be so constructed that it

can be rotated inside the ring, and fixed in any desired position. The manner of achieving this is shown in Figure 1, (opposite f.11r) in which only a few details are conjectural. The perforated tongue and the matching holes in the ring prescribed in the Persian text are not mentioned in the Nuzhah. Instead Kāshī prescribes (NS, p.270) that, the plate having been set in proper position with respect to the ring, it be fixed with a bit of wax. This detail is the only one in which the author of the Persian text has exhibited any originality whatever. In all other instances he simply chooses from among the possibilities suggested by Kāshī. The use of a circular set of fine, equally spaced holes is found also in Chaucer's equatorium, but not for reproducing the apsidal motion. (Cf. [42], pp.49-52.)

On our Figure 1 only four of the five circles demanded by the text have actually been drawn. A circular scale showing all five may be seen on page 48 of [42].

In these passages the language of the Nuzhah and that of the Persian version are parallel, but with some divergence. In speaking of the size of the instrument the former says (NS, p.251)

The least that it is possible for its
diameter to be is half of the great cubit
(al-dhirā' ^c al-kabīr), but it is better if
it be two cubits of the Hāshimī cubits, or
three cubits.

A cubit is the length of a forearm. The variety known as the common cubit contains about 54.0 cm., the great Hāshimī cubit about 66.5 cm., and the small Hāshimī cubit about 60.1 cm. (Cf. [13], p.55; [49], p.491), thus the ambiguity of the texts remains largely unresolved.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

It is of interest to note that the same connection between size of the instrument and precision made by our author (f. 5v:13 - 6r:2) is made also by Chaucer ([42], p.18), and in almost the same terms.

3. The Jummāl System of Writing Numbers

As was customary with Islamic astronomical works, the numbers in our text are represented by means of letters of the Arabic alphabet. Each letter has a numerical value found by coupling the letters, in the order of the old Semitic alphabet, with the sequence 1,2,3,...,10,20,30,...,100,200,300,... . Integers are indicated by proper combinations of letters in what is thus a non-place-value decimal system.

Fractions, however, are displayed in a place-value system with base sixty, the sexagesimal digits 0,1,2,...,59 being written as indicated above. We transcribe them as ordinary numerals, using commas to separate sexagesimal digits, and a semicolon as sexagesimal point. When arcs are involved, units of thirty degrees each may also be encountered, each one a zodiacal sign (burj, plural burūj). For these we use a superscript s. Thus either $9^s 23;7,0,54^\circ$ or $293;7,0,54^\circ$ means

$$293 + \frac{7}{60} + \frac{0}{60^2} + \frac{54}{60^3} \text{ degrees.}$$

Note that we write sexagesimals with the powers of sixty in the denominators increasing to the right; in the Arabic script they increase to the left.

To elevate (Persian raf^c kardan) a sexagesimal means, as we would put it, to move the sexagesimal point one place to the right. The first elevate (marfu^c) of 0;0,29,7. Its second elevate is 29;7. To depress (munhat gereftan) a sexagesimal

is to perform the inverse operation of elevating, i.e., to move the sexagesimal point to the left.

In a pure sexagesimal system, which we will use when convenient, both integer and fractional parts of real numbers are expressed in powers of sixty. For instance $1,0 = 60$.

The reader will find additional material on the Arabic sexagesimal system in [15].

4. Planetary Apogees (f. 7r)

For the moon and the planets, deferent circles are to be drawn or engraved on the disk. The edge of the disk itself is to serve as the sun's deferent. Kāshī, like most of the other Islamic astronomers, regarded the planetary apogees as fixed with respect to each other and to the fixed stars. It was therefore necessary to impose the motion of precession on all the apsidal longitudes. This was to be accomplished by rotating the disk within the ring and setting it so that the apsidal lines had the proper longitudes for the time for which planetary positions were being determined.

The first step in the procedure was to assume a line of apsides for the sun and then to lay off the other apsidal lines with respect to it at the angular distances given in the table on f.7r. The entries of this table are rounded-off values from an equivalent table on f.128 of Kāshī's own Khāqānī Zīj [23]. Our Table 1 below has in its second column these numbers from the zīj and in the first column the longitudes of the apogees according to this work as of the year 781 Yazdigerd, the epoch of the zīj.

The numbers shown are completely secure, since positions of the apogees are also given in the zīj for years 782, 783,..., 790 Yazdigerd, and scribal errors can be restored by checking

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

Planet	Apogee	Apogee of Each Planet Less the Solar Apogee
♄	8 ^s 11;27,26 ^o	5 ^s 10;28,17 ^o
♃	6 0;15,0	2 29;15,51
♂	4 17;4,26	1 16;5,17
♀	2 20;14,28	11 19;15,19
♂	7 3;39,28	4 2;40,19
♁	3 0;59,9	-----

Table 1

one value against another.

From various sources, mostly Islamic, the editor has assembled a collection of thirty sets of planetary apogees. While many do not vary widely from this one, no other set is identical with it. It is probably taken from the *Zīj-i Īlkhānī* (No.6 in [29]) and may be based on observations made at the Marāghah observatory of Naṣīr al-Dīn al-Ṭūsī.

5. Laying out the Planetary Deferents (f. 7r:10 - 8r:1)

After having located the apsidal lines, the next step is to mark the deferent centers. Each such center is on its respective apsidal line, at a distance from the plate center equal to the planet's eccentricity. A table of eccentricities is the first of the two tables on f. 7v, the units being sixtieths of the plate radius. The centers, having been marked permanently on the plate, the deferents can then be drawn, corresponding radii, expressed in the same units, being given in the second table on the same page.

It was customary to express planetary parameters in sixtieths of the deferent radius. Kāshī, however, gives them

COMMENTARY

all in sixtieths of the plate radius. He has shortened all the deferent radii in order to prevent the circles from running off the plate and to have them snugly nested, no two intersecting. In order to "norm" these parameters, that is, express them in the customary fashion, we have computed for each planet a "norming coefficient", $1,0/R$, where R is the deferent radius as given in the text. The quotients make up Column 2 of Table 2 below. They are used to norm the eccentricities of the text. Side by side with the results (Column 4) are the eccentricities used in the *Almagest*. The reader will note that corresponding parameters are identical, or nearly so, except for Venus. The reading 1;3 is confirmed in the *Nuzhah* and in the *Khāqānī Zīj* [23]. In the former all

Planet	①	②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧
	Deferent Radii	Norming Coefficients = 1,0/①	Eccentricities	Normed Eccentricities = ② · ③	Ptolemaic Eccentricities	Epicyle Radii	Normed Epicyle Radii = ② · ⑥	Ptolemaic Epicyle Radii
♂	52;2	1;9,11	2;58	3;25	3;25	5;38	6;30	6;30
♂	55;28	1;4,55	2;32	2;44	2;45	10;38	11;30	11;30
♂	45;27	1;19,12	4;33	6;0	6;0	30;32	40;18	39;30
♀	58;58	1;1,3	1;2	1;3	1;15	42;25	43;10	43;10
♂	51;23	1;13,56	4;52	6;0	6;0	18;13	22;27	22;30

Table 2

the planetary parameters placed on the instrument are attributed

to the Īlkhānī observations. A non-Ptolemaic eccentricity for Venus is not surprising. Nearby values used by al-Bīrūnī, al-Zarqālla, and Ibn al-Shātir are cited in [31].

6. The Deferents of the Two Luminaries (f. 7r:4 - 8r:1)

There is no need to norm Kāshī's parameters as given for either the sun or the moon. The solar deferent being the rim of the disk, its radius is already sixty. As for the moon, Ptolemy in the *Almagest* broke the 60-unit radius of the Hipparchian non-eccentric deferent into two parts, of lengths 10;19 and 49;41. These are the lunar parameters given on f. 7v.

Since the lunar apsidal line moves with great rapidity, the disk must be specially set each time the moon's position is to be determined, and the center of its deferent can be marked at any convenient place on the disk, say along the radius passing through the small tongue on its periphery.

The solar eccentricity prescribed, 2;6,9, differs considerably from the Ptolemaic 2;30 ([43], iii, 4). There is no doubt, however, as to the correctness of this reading. It appears also in the *Nuzhah* (NS, p.252), and twice in the *Khaqānī Zīj* ([23], ff. 95v and 157r). Doubtless this also is from the Īlkhānī observations; in his *zīj* Kāshī simply says that it is based on new observations.

It is close to the values used by other Islamic astronomers. Bīrūnī, in discussing the solar equation (cf. [30]) regards 2;5 as a rounded-off standard parameter. It is common to Ḥabash al-Ḥāsib, Abū al-Wafā', and the Banī Mūsā. Al-Battānī ([3], vol.1, p.213) made it 2;4,45. Ibn al-Shātir uses, in effect, 2;7 (= 4;37-2;30, cf. [46], p.429).

7. The Deferent of Mercury (f. 8r:4-12)

The highly eccentric behavior of Mercury forced Ptolemy

to devise a model differing from that of the other planets. Instead of being fixed, the deferent center itself (D on Figure 3) moves on the arc of a circle with center at F and radius equal to three sixtieths of the deferent radius, DP. The equant center is at E, colinear with FC, C being the center of the universe, and $CE = EF = FD$. DP so moves that at all times $\theta_1 = \theta_2$. The resultant curve traced out by P and indicated by the succession of small circles on the figure is slightly oval, and has AR as an axis of symmetry. It can be regarded as a non-circular deferent for Mercury.

Kāshī approximates this curve by two circular arcs whose centers are at B and B' and whose radii are 51;23 sixtieths of the plate radius. As described in the text, B and B' are each 5;8 of these units on either side of the "turning center" (F). The latter, the center of the oval deferent, is to be 4;52 units along the line of apsides from the plate center.

In our Figure 3 the scale of the Ptolemaic locus has been so chosen that apogee A and perigee R coincide with the corresponding points on Kāshī's deferent. It will be observed that the latter is a good approximation to the Ptolemaic curve, the two loci practically coinciding for wide distances on either side of H and H'.

To obtain a norming coefficient for Mercury, we note that in Kāshī's units 56;0, the sum of the eccentricity (4;52) and the semimajor axis of the deferent (51;8), corresponds to 1,9;0 in Ptolemy's configuration. Hence the ratio of these two numbers, $1,9/56 = 1;13,56$, is the desired coefficient.

8. An Oval Deferent for the Moon

In Appendix 1 of NS (p.289) Kāshī remarks that an oval

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

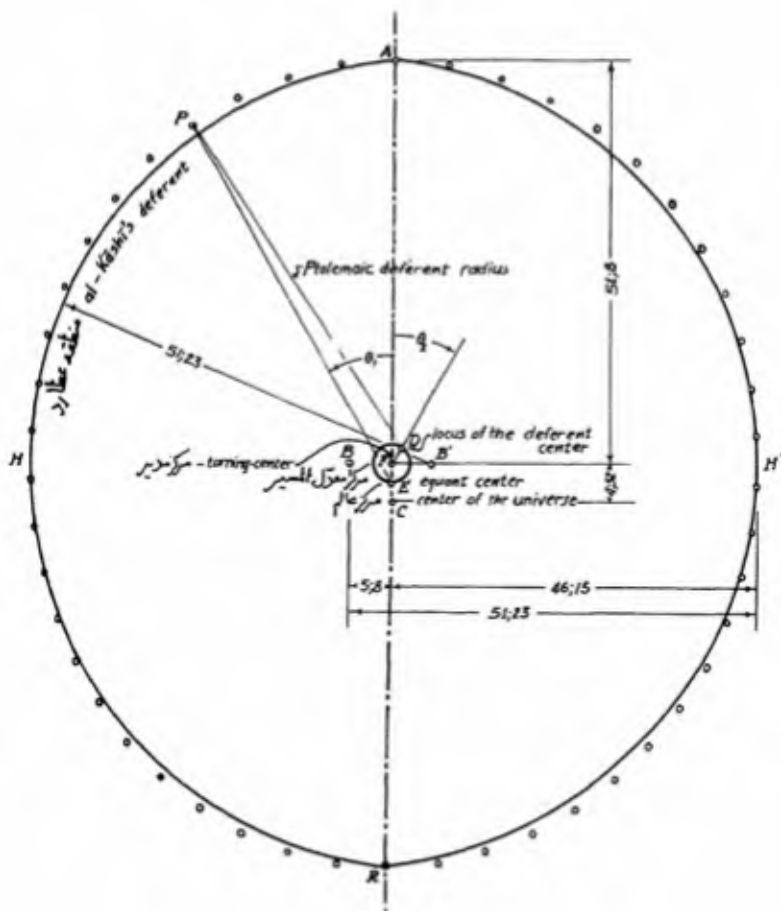


Figure 3. The Oval Deferent of Mercury

lunar deferent can be drawn permanently on the plate, thus eliminating some of the manipulations, described in Chapter II,4 of the text, for the determination of the moon's true longitude. That this is the case can easily be verified by recalling that in an abstract sense the Ptolemaic models for the moon and Mercury differ only slightly (cf. [41], Appendix I). The similarity is obscured by the rapid motion of the lunar line of apsides, but with respect to the latter the epicycle center does indeed trace out an invariant oval path in space. It is curious that whereas a number of equatorium makers laid out oval deferents for Mercury, insofar as we know only Kāshī suggested doing likewise for the moon, and then only as an afterthought.

The strongly (and erroneously) oval character of the Ptolemaic lunar orbit is portrayed in Figure 4, which shows the path of the moon plotted to scale at four day intervals through the course of a month. The direction of the mean sun on corresponding days is also indicated.

9. Marking the Equant Centers (f. 8v:1-7)

For each of the three superior planets and for Venus a point is marked on the apsidal line, outward from the deferent center by a distance equal to the eccentricity. For Mercury the equant center (E on Figure 3) is put halfway between the turning center (F), and the plate center (C). This corresponds to the Ptolemaic arrangement.

The moon has no equant, but its "opposite point" is marked on the plate, along the apsidal line, but on the opposite side of the plate center from the deferent center. The distance from the plate center to the opposite point is 10;19, the lunar eccentricity.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

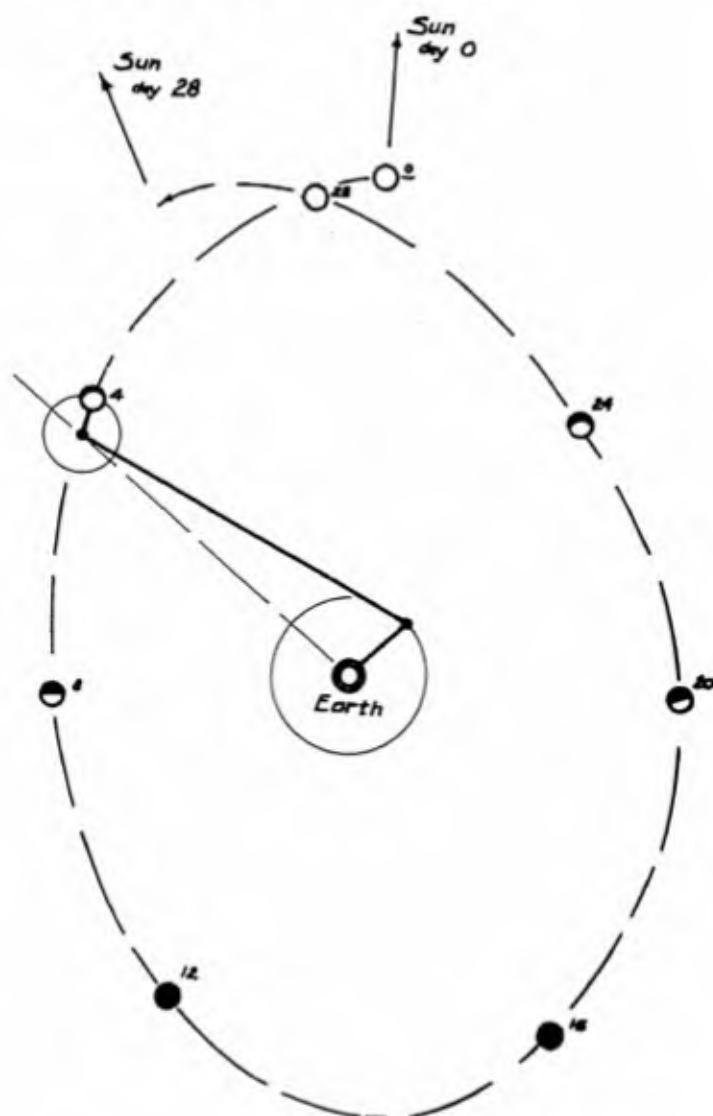


Figure 4. The Ptolemaic Lunar Orbit

10. Alternative Plate Layouts

In the Nuzhah, Kāshī does not content himself with the single arrangement of the plate and alidade given above. He describes in addition variants of the basic scheme. For instance, instead of letting the plate center represent the center of the universe for all the planets it is possible to make the deferent centers all coincide with the center of the plate. Then for each planet except Mercury the points representing the center of the universe and the equant center are placed symmetrically on the line of apsides on either side of the plate center. A plate thus laid out is said to be of the "parallel deferent" (mutawāzī al-manātiq) type.

Again, if no objection is made to the deferents intersecting, and if it is wished to retain the plate center as center of the universe for all planets, full advantage may be taken of the size of the plate to choose scales such that all deferents will just touch the edge of the plate. This is equivalent to demanding that the sum of the eccentricity and the deferent radius equal 1,0. Tables of the resulting parameters are given in the Nuzhah, the units being sixtieths of the plate radius.

Thirdly, in the "single deferent" (muttaḥid al-manātiq) type the edge of the plate itself is made to serve as the deferent for all the planets whose deferents are circular, just as was the case with the sun. For each planet this again pushes the center of the universe out along its individual apsidal line, the eccentricities and epicycle radii being the normed entries in Columns 4 and 7 of Table 2 above.

Finally, the plate may be laid out with the same apogee for all the planets, and the position of the apsidal line taken into consideration by a separate setting of the plate

THE PLANETARY EQUATORUM

within the ring for each planet. Or, since the apsidal motions are slow, the movable ring may be dispensed with altogether, the apsidal lines being laid out once and for all to a fixed position in the zodiac correct for the time when the instrument is made.

Kāshī enumerates some fifteen combinations of these various possibilities.

11. The Medieval Sine Function

The two references to sines in the text make it necessary to state that the function referred to is not the modern function, for which the radius of the defining circle is unity, but its ancestor, defined in terms of a circle of radius sixty. We distinguish between the two by writing the symbol for the medieval function with an initial capital, thus $\text{Sin } \theta$, say. The identity relating the two functions is

$$\text{Sin } \theta = 1,0 \sin \theta.$$

When computations are carried out in sexagesimals, the transformation from one function to the other is trivial, since the medieval function is simply the first elevate (cf. Section 3 above) of the modern function.

In our text the plate radius is consistently taken as 1,0.

12. The Latitude Circles on the Plate (f. 8v:10 - 10r:2)

The description in f. 9r:10 - 10r:2 is not found in NK at all. It makes up part of Appendix 3 (p.291) of NS, hence represents one of Kāshī's many afterthoughts, replacing in the Persian text his original technique for solving the problem of planetary latitudes. This shows that the anonymous author

COMMENTARY

of our text worked from a copy of NS.

The two versions are practically identical in meaning. A permanent line, the equating diameter (shown on Figure 13) is to be drawn on the plate and through its center. When latitudes are being computed the plate is to be fixed in the ring so that one extremity of the equating diameter coincides with the origin on the ring, i.e. Aries 0° . Several semicircles are drawn permanently on the plate, all concentric with the ring, and all having some segment of the equating diameter as bounding diameter. The radius of the largest is to be $\sin 9^{\circ}$ (cf. Section 11 above). A convenient way of obtaining this is to join the pair of points on the ring which are both nine degrees away from the equating diameter and on the same side of it. The result is a line parallel to the equating diameter and distant from it by $\sin 9^{\circ}$. The required semicircle can then easily be drawn, tangent to this line. Then fill the inside of this semicircle with a set of parallel lines as indicated in Figure 5 (reproduced from NS, p.292),

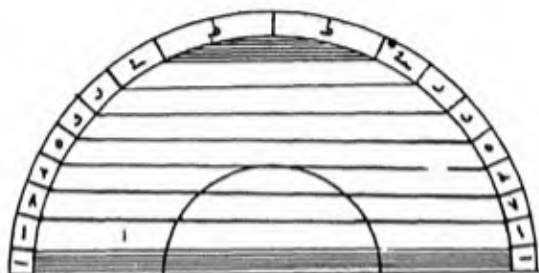


Figure 5. The Latitude Circles and Lines, from NS

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

these to be drawn by connecting pairs of graduations on the ring which are at equal distances from the equating diameter. The endpoints of the segments are to be marked with numbers corresponding to the degrees distance of the point-pairs from the equating diameter, 8° , 7° , 6° , and so on, and the lines at fractional distances also. These segments are known as the latitude lines. They are also shown, more crudely, on f. 11r. The basic fact to be borne in mind concerning them is that if a latitude line is marked θ its distance from the equating diameter is $\sin \theta$.

The second semicircle, the moon's latitude circle, is to be drawn tangent to the 5° line. On Figure 5 (i.e. in the NS) it has been made erroneously tangent to the 4° line.

The last two semicircles, for Venus' first latitude and the latitude of Mercury, are drawn tangent to the ten minute and forty-five minute lines respectively.

From a practical point of view, and on a plate of any reasonable size, the Venus and Mercury semicircles would be so small as to make it impossible either to draw or to utilize them. Doubtless Kāshī was carried away by the theoretical considerations described in Section 25 below.

For material on f. 10r:2-11 see Section 33 below.

13. The Latitude Points (f. 8v:12 - 9r:9)

Eight permanent marks are to be put on the equating diameter, two for each superior planet, one each for Venus and Mercury, all on the half of the diameter opposite the first point of Aries. Distances of these points from the plate center are given in the table on f. 9r. Following is an explanation of how these particular distances were arrived at.

COMMENTARY

In the planetary theory of the *Almagest* the deferent planes of all the planets are slightly inclined with respect to the ecliptic, intersecting the latter along the nodal line, which passes through the center of the universe. The nodal line of each inferior planet is perpendicular to the line of (deferent) apsides of that planet. For all the other planets, however, the angles between these two lines differ. Kāshī's values are given on f. 22v. They are the same as those of the *Almagest* ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.ii, p.414) except for Mars, for which the Ptolemaic value is 90° . But here the divergence is apparent only, for Ptolemy computes the angle as $95\frac{1}{2}^\circ$, subsequently deciding that use of 90° will involve only a negligible error. In effect Kāshī does the same thing.

Assume a line drawn in the deferent plane through E in Figure 12, the center of the universe, perpendicular to the nodal line MN. and intersecting the deferent in F (on the side of the apogee) and G (on the side of the perigee). Then, in the case of the superior planets, the two distances of the latitude points are EF and EG.

These distances can be computed directly in terms of the deferent radius and eccentricity. In all probability, however, Kāshī obtained them directly from the *Almagest*. For Saturn the corresponding distances in the Ptolemaic configuration are 1,2;10 and 57;40. For Jupiter they are 1,2;30 and 57;30. Division of each of these numbers by the proper norming coefficient obtainable from Column 2 of Table 2 gives the corresponding entries in the table on f. 9r.

As for Mars, its line of apsides is so close to FG that for two-place accuracy it is sufficient simply to add and subtract Kāshī's value of Mars' eccentricity from its deferent radius to obtain the desired quantities. Thus

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

$$EF = EA = ED + DA = 50;0$$

and

$$GE = PE = PD - ED = 40;54.$$

For both inferior planets, maximum inclination of the epicycle plane occurs at the nodes (M and N on Figure 12). Hence the distances of the latitude points for these planets are ME and NE. But, AP being perpendicular to MN, ME = NE. And the eccentricity of Venus is so small that its deferent radius, 58;58, is used for the common distance. For Mercury, 46;0 is the distance perpendicular to the line of apsides from the center of the universe to the deferent, hence the distance to its latitude point.

14. The Alidade and Ruler (f. 11v:1 - 12r:6, 13r:4-8)

Although most of Chapter I,4 of the text is clear, there are a few obscure passages which are best clarified by first reading corresponding sections in the Nuzhah. The following is a free rendition of NS, pp.253-255, interspersed with such comments as seem appropriate. Make two rulers, says Kāshī, one like the alidade of an edged (muharrafah) astrolabe, but having two graduated edges, one for the true longitudes, the other for latitudes. It is as though a pair of graduated alidades were combined, back to back. Each edge shall have a semicircular projection at its midpoint, as small as practicable, and pierced by a round hole so that either edge can be pivoted to rotate about the plate center. In length the alidade should be slightly greater than the plate diameter.

The first of the two edges, called the diameter-edge (ḥarf al-quṭr), is to be graduated in equal divisions, sixtieths of the plate diameter and fractions of these to the extent possible. The divisions are to be numbered outward from the

COMMENTARY

center in both directions.

The second edge, the arcs-edge (harf al-quṣṣī), has four sets of graduations marked upon it, each set being the projections on the alidade edge of the points of division of the ring. The four scales are obtained by effecting the projection when the alidade is in each of four different positions. For all four positions the alidade is pivoted on the plate at the hole on the arcs-edge side. One extremity of the arcs-edge is designated the head, or northern end, the other the tail or southern end. If the arc from the head of the arcs-edge to the first point of Aries on the ring is Θ , then the point on the ring having a longitude of λ will project onto the edge at a distance $\cos(\lambda + \Theta)$, provided that the plate radius is taken as unity. The four prescribed positions can be fixed by specifying the value of Θ corresponding to each. They are

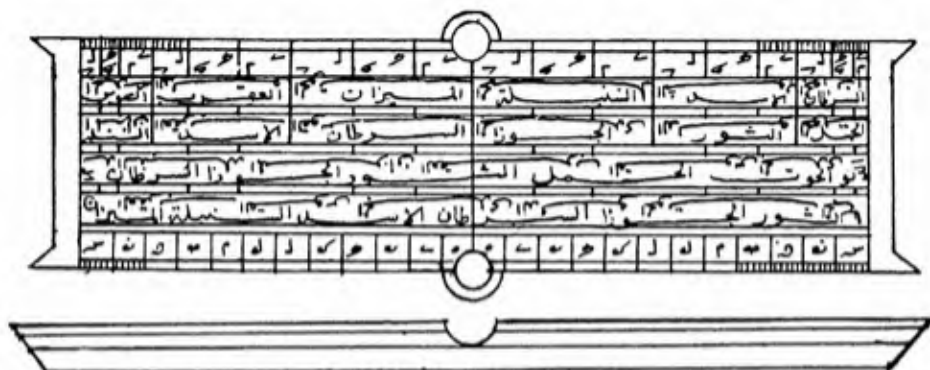


Figure 6. The Alidade and Ruler, from NS

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

1. $\theta = 90^\circ$, for computing the latitudes of the moon and the second latitude of the inferior planets
2. $\theta = 0^\circ$, for the latitude of Mars and the first and third latitudes of the inferior planets
3. $\theta = 80^\circ$, for the latitude of Saturn
4. $\theta = 10^\circ$, for the latitude of Jupiter.

The general appearance of the alidade is well portrayed in Figure 6, reproduced from NS, p.256. Except for the double pivot feature, it closely resembles the alidades on many existent astrolabes, for example those shown in [9], pp.121, 162, 267, and 308.

The basic principles employed in the arcs-edge, that of a linear nomogram for trigonometric functions, appears also in the dastūr quadrant (cf. [50], p.73).

The second object described in Chapter I,4, the ruler proper, is in NS specified as being narrower than the alidade, but of the same length. As indicated in Figure 6, it is to have a semicircular recess let into the center of one edge, of the same diameter as the projecting lugs on the alidades, so that the two straight-edges can be fitted snugly together. The ruler edge is to be graduated in sixtieths of the plate radius.

All three sources prescribe connecting the ruler and alidade with a chain, and the mounting of sights on the alidade to enable the user to take altitudes with the instrument. The only other equatorium into which this observational feature has been incorporated is the "Albion" developed in 1326 by Richard of Wallingford. (Cf. [42], p.128).

Descriptions of the other markings on the alidade and

COMMENTARY

ruler are deferred to the sections where the solutions of specific problems are discussed.

We are now in a position to return to the Persian text, bearing in mind that its anonymous author has here abridged the corresponding parts of the *Nuzhah*, sometimes so drastically as to be unintelligible. He evidently has abandoned the second set of graduations, the arcs-edge, hence he has no need of the second semicircular lug on the other side of the alidade.

As will be seen in the sequel, the main function of the ruler is to mark out directions parallel to a setting of the alidade edge made by using the graduations on the ring. According to f. 19v:9-11, the two edges are to be made parallel by seeing that the arcs of the ring intercepted between them are equal. *Kāshī* evidently noted the practical inconvenience of this operation, and in Appendix 4 of NS (p.297) he describes the construction of a set of parallel rulers. Our Figure 7 is reproduced from page 298 of NS.

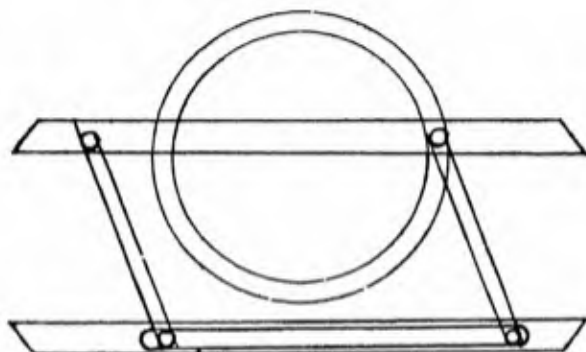


Figure 7. Parallel Rulers, from NS

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

15. The Difference Marks - Epicycle Radii (f. 12r:7 - 12v:3)

A set of six marks is to be engraved on one edge of the alidade at distances from the plate center specified in the table on f. 12r. Alternatively six circles may be drawn permanently on the plate, concentric with it, and having radii whose lengths are the tabular entries. In either event, each number is the length of the epicycle radius of the planet with which it is associated.

For the moon, the radius of 5;17 is close to the Ptolemaic 5;15. It is rounded off from Kāshī's own 5;16,46,36 resulting from the eclipse observations described in the opening sections of his zīj ([23] f. 4r - 6r).

Since the deferent radii of the planets proper have been shortened below the standard 60 units, their epicycle radii also have been cut down in proportion. In order to compare them with the lengths used by other astronomers it has been necessary to multiply each one by the corresponding norming coefficient found in Column 2 of Table 2. The results appear in Column 7 of the same table. It will be noted that only Mars and Mercury exhibit any difference with the Almagest values. In his zīj ([23], f. 98v) Kāshī states that the length 40;18 was determined as a consequence of the Īlkhānī observations. For Mercury the Ptolemaic 23;30 reappears on f. 110r of his zīj.

For material on f. 12v:3 - 13r:3 see Sections 36 and 40 below.

16. The Table of Mean Positions and Mean Motions (f. 13r:9 - 13v:6, 14v, 18r:9 - 19v:3)

The raw data to be fed into the instrument consist of the mean positions of the planets and their anomalies at a given

instant. These numbers are to be computed from some such table as that supplied on f. 14v of the text. The column headings of this table are self-explanatory except for the last two. The term khāseh-yi murakkabeh, compound anomaly, seems to be peculiar to Kāshī. He means by it the sum of the mean solar longitude and the mean anomaly of an inferior planet.

The entries in the first ten rows of the table give values of the mean longitude or anomaly for the initial instants of years 851, 852, 853,..., 860 Yazdigerd respectively. According to the marginal note on f. 18r the first day of 851 Yazdigerd (= 16 November, 1481) was chosen for epoch as having been the year of the enthronement of Bāyazīd II. The epoch of the era of Yazdigerd is 16 June, 632 A.D., the years being of just 365 days, made up of the twelve thirty-day months named in the table, plus five epagomenal days. (Cf. [10], p.298). The entries in the remaining rows display the motion of the respective longitudes or anomalies in the lengths of time indicated. These are 10, 20, 30,..., 100, 200, 300,..., 1000 Yazdigerd years, then months, days, and one hour. The numbers shown for each month are cumulative in the sense that they represent the total motion from the beginning of a year up to the beginning of the particular month. The entries opposite the numbers 1, 2, 3,..., 10 are cumulative in the same manner, for example, those in the same row as 4 give the motion for three days. The entries in the row of the second 10, however, are motions for ten days, and those in the following row are for twenty days.

All entries are in zodiacal signs, degrees and minutes, and integer multiples of twelve signs have been dropped from the reckoning. Numbers in square brackets indicate restorations to the text. The technique of checking entries is

explained in Sections 17 and 18 below. The only systematic errors in the table are those entailed by the computer having taken an erroneous $12;3,38^\circ$ per year (instead of the correct $12;13,38^\circ$) for the annual mean motion of Saturn. This has affected only that part of our table which is not identical with the mean motion table of the Nuzhah.

The process of determining mean positions for a given time is explained in Chapter II,2 of the text, and requires no amplification except perhaps for the correction to be applied when a determination is to be made for a place of longitude other than that of Constantinople. Under such circumstances the difference in degrees between the longitudes of the two places is multiplied by $24/360 = 0;4$ to obtain the time difference. This is added to the local time if the locality is east of Constantinople, otherwise it is subtracted.

The longitude of the latter place as given in the text, 60° , is probably rounded off from the value of $59;50^\circ$ given in the Khāqānī Zīj ([23], f. 74v). Al-Battānī ([3], vol.ii, p.44) has $56;40^\circ$ for the same coordinate, following Ptolemy (cf. [14], p.196). Al-Khwārizmī, however, gives $49;50^\circ$, which appears in numerous places in Ms. Vat. Gr. 1058. Hence it looks as though Kāshī's zīj value is a miscopied version of this, which our text rounds off. This still leaves us with two distinct traditions for the longitude of Constantinople.

17. "Squeezing" Mean Motion Parameters from Tables

Although the entries of our table are given to three sexagesimal places only, it is possible to "squeeze" from the tabular information a good approximation to the much more precise elements used to compute the table in the first place. The technique can best be explained by a worked example. We

deduce below the base parameter for Mercury's compound anomaly.

A first approximation to the daily motion is seen from the table to be $4;6^{\circ}$ per day. Multiplication by $60 = 1,0$ moves the sexagesimal point one place to the right to yield $4,6;0^{\circ}$ for the distance travelled in two Persian months. The entry opposite Khurdād, however, is $8^{\text{S}} 5;33^{\circ}$, so we correct our first approximation to $4;5,33^{\circ}$ for the daily motion. The product of this by $365 = 6,5$ gives $24,53;45,45^{\circ}$. Casting off complete revolutions of $360^{\circ} = 6,0^{\circ}$, there remains $53;45,45 \approx 1^{\text{S}} 23;46^{\circ}$. The most frequent tabular difference between entries in the yearly positions is $1^{\text{S}} 23;44^{\circ}$, so we correct our yearly distance to $24,53;44^{\circ}$ and multiply by 10. The result is $4,8,57;20^{\circ}$, the terminal digit of which is corrected to 19 by comparison with the tabular entry of $5^{\text{S}} 27;19^{\circ}$, and the process continues. It ends with a value of $6,54,55,31;52^{\circ}$ for the distance travelled in 1000 Persian (i.e. Egyptian) years. Now operate backwards, successively dividing by 1000, then by 365 to obtain $24,53;43,54,43,12^{\circ}$ and $4;5,32,41,42,27^{\circ}$ for the basic yearly and daily rates of this parameter.

Thus the process is seen to be one of gradually building up the higher digits of the parameter by repeated multiplication, each time correcting the lower digits by comparison with the table. Each parameter has been treated in this manner to obtain the set exhibited below.

18. The Mean Motion Base Parameters

As squeezed from the table and expressed in degrees per day the mean motions used in the text are

☿	$0;59,8,19,44,36^{\circ}$
♄	$13;10,35,1,53$
♄ (anomaly)	$13;3,53,56,30,54$

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

♂	0;3,10,38,18,44
♂	0;2,0,36,4,44
♂	0;4,59,16,23
♂	0;31,26,39,35,54
♀ (anomaly)	0;36,59,28,13
♀ (anomaly)	3;6,24,21,58
Apogees (=precession)	0;0,0,8,27

The anomalistic motions shown for the two inferior planets do not result directly from the table. They are obtained by subtracting the solar motion from the compound anomaly.

Comparison of these numbers with the set of parameters independently squeezed from the Khaqānī Zīj ([23], ff. 127v - 130r) by M. Agha enables us to verify the author's statement that the positions and motions are indeed those of the zīj. The tables of the zīj, however, do not give mean longitudes as such, but the mean "centers", that is, distances of the mean planets from their respective apogees. The epoch of the zīj, moreover, is 781 Yazdigerd, and its base location is Shīrāz. The longitude of the latter place is taken as 88;0° (cf. [23], f. 73r).

We note further that in general these are the parameters of the Īlkhānī Zīj, upon which Kāshī's tables are based. For the moon, however, Kāshī has computed independent parameters based upon his observations of three lunar eclipses, those of 2 June and 26 November, 1406, and 22 May of the following year. ([23], f. 4r - 6r).

19. Mean Motions in the Nuzhah

Both versions of the Nuzhah refer to a table of mean motions. It is missing from the only extant copy of NK, but

COMMENTARY

appears on p.259 of NS. The epoch of this table is different from that of our text; it gives mean positions for Yazdigerd years 801, 802, 803,..., 810, and the base longitude is 88° , that of Shīrāz (cf. Section 18 above). Otherwise the two tables are the same.

In Appendix 5 of NS Kāshī states that he has worked out a device for eliminating even the few additions and subtractions involved in computing mean positions from a table. His invention is in essence a circular slide rule for performing algebraic addition of arcs. To construct it he prescribes drawing a family of circles on one face of the plate, concentric with it, and in sufficient number to accommodate the scales next described. These amount to a graphical mean motion table. For all planets the mean positions given in the table are marked on the circles, the origin of each circle being its intersection with the plate radius drawn to the first point of Aries on the divisions of the ring. In addition to this, arcs are laid out on suitable circles, their lengths being equal to the mean travel of the various planets and their anomalies in hundreds, and tens of years, in months, days, and fractions thereof to the extent to which marking the plate is practicable. A metal ring is made so as to fit snugly on the plate just touching the inner edge of the graduated ring surrounding the plate. Two straight rulers, of length a little greater than the plate radius, are pivoted at the plate center in such fashion that an edge of each passes through the plate center. If the date for which a planet's mean position is required happens to be the beginning of one of the years marked on a circle, simply project this mark with the edge of one of the rulers out to the graduations of the outer ring. Otherwise use the two rulers and the mean

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

motion scales to lay out on the inner ring an arc equal to the mean travel of the planet in question in the time elapsed between the given date and one of the years permanently marked. Then rotate the inner ring so that the initial point of the marked arc lies along the projection of the fixed point just utilized. The desired mean position will now be at the projection on the outer ring of the arc's terminal point.

Kāshī remarks that if each of the circular scales is made so that it can be individually rotated, there will be no need for the inner ring.

For material on f. 15r:1 - 17v see Section 43.

20. Determination of the Solar True Longitude (f. 19v:4 - 20r:4)

The Ptolemaic model of the sun's motion being extremely simple, the determination of its true position with the instrument is equally simple. The plate circumference itself represents the solar deferent, the apogee (represented in Figure 1 and 8 by the plate tongue) having already been fixed at its proper longitude. The fictitious center (F in either of Figures 1 or 8) stands for the center of the universe. Thus CF, the distance from the plate center to the fictitious center, is the solar eccentricity. Having computed the sun's mean longitude, lay it off as the arc AM by using the divisions of the ring. M is Kāshī's mark of the mean. Then the angle at which M is observed from F, measured from the equinoctial direction, is the true longitude. To evaluate this angle, lay the edge of the ruler along FM and rotate the alidade until it is parallel to the ruler. Then the arc AT is the required true longitude. The angular difference between the true and the mean longitudes, arc MT, is the solar equation. The length of MF, measured

COMMENTARY

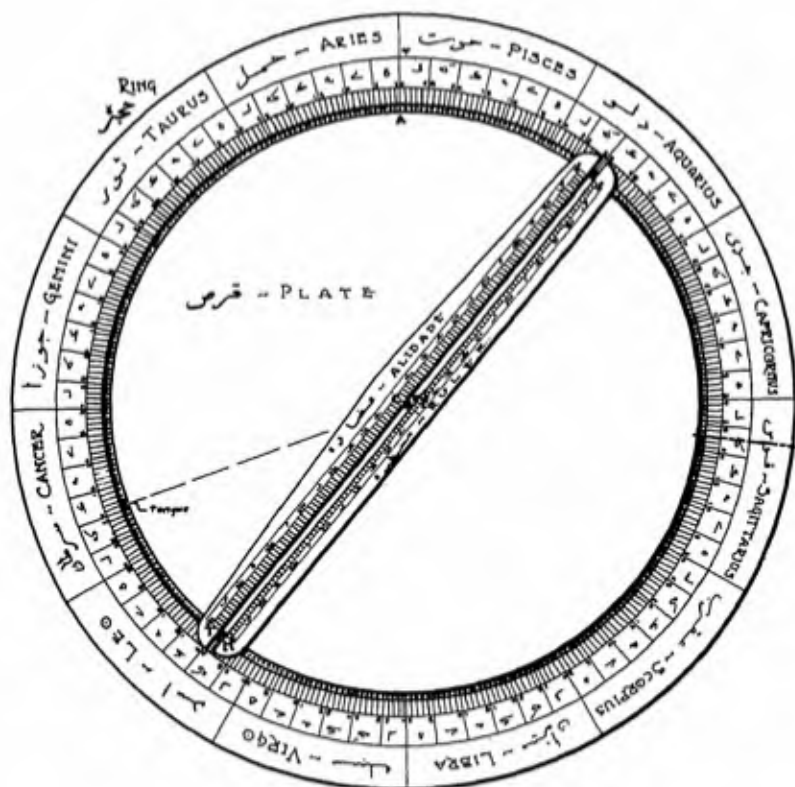


Figure 8. The Instrument, Set Up for Finding the Sun's True Longitude

with the scale marked off on the ruler, is the earth-sun distance. In this case there is no need for a norming operation since the units are the standard ones in ancient astronomy,

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

sixtieths of the deferent radius.

21. Determination of the Lunar True Longitude (f. 20r:5 - 20v:13)

In using the instrument to find the true ecliptic position of the moon at a given time, first compute from the mean motion table: (1) the lunar mean longitude, (2) the lunar mean anomaly, and (3) the solar mean longitude. Then mark P (see Figure 1), the position of the mean moon, on the edge of the ring. Find e , the moon's mean elongation, being the difference between (1) and (3) above. Starting from P measure clockwise along the edge of the ring an arc PS equal to $2e$, the double elongation. Rotate the plate until its tongue comes opposite S and fix it here with the peg. By means of the alidade mark E the intersection of CP with the moon's deferent. E is Kāshī's mark of the center. Put the ruler along E and N, the point opposite, and rotate the alidade until it is parallel to the ruler. Mark B, the intersection of the alidade edge with the edge of the ring, the directed segments CB and NE thus being parallel and in the same sense. As the author says, it is from this point that the mean anomalistic motion is to be measured. Now rotate the alidade clockwise the amount of the anomaly, (2) above, through the arc BK. This puts the alidade in the position shown in our figure.

In order to complete the Ptolemaic lunar configuration all that remains is to lay off the epicycle radius in proper length and direction (parallel to the alidade edge) from E. Its endpoint L will then correspond to the position of the moon in space. However, this construction presents some difficulty from the practical point of view, for, as is the case with our figure, L may run off the plate entirely. Moreover, we are not primarily interested in locating L, but rather

COMMENTARY

in determining the direction of the vector CL. We recall that a lunar difference mark (Cf. f. 12r:9) has been put on the alidade edge at a distance from the center equal to the epicycle radius. The author specifically cautions us that the position of the alidade should now be such that the difference mark falls opposite the end of anomalistic motion, i.e. D being the difference mark, vector CD must have a sense opposite to vector EL. Mark the position of D on the plate and lay the ruler along DE. Since the latter equals the required vector sum of CE and EL, if the alidade is now rotated parallel to the ruler, its intersection, G, with the edge of the ring will give the required true longitude of the moon. The final passage in the chapter (f. 20v:12-13) applies only if the plate has not been set in the ring to show the proper lunar apsidal longitude at the start of the operation.

22. Determination of a Planetary True Longitude (f. 21r:1 - 21v:7)

The solution of this problem with the equatorium resembles that of the analogous lunar problem. First compute from the table of mean motions the mean longitude of the sun for the instant required, and either the planet's mean longitude (for a superior planet) or the compound anomaly (for an inferior planet). Presumably the plate has already been fixed inside the ring so that the solar and planetary apogees have their proper longitudes. Letter references in the sequel are to Figure 9, which shows the final positions of alidade and ruler in the solution of such a problem for the planet Mars. The drawing is to scale.

Rotate the alidade until its edge is at the planet's mean

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

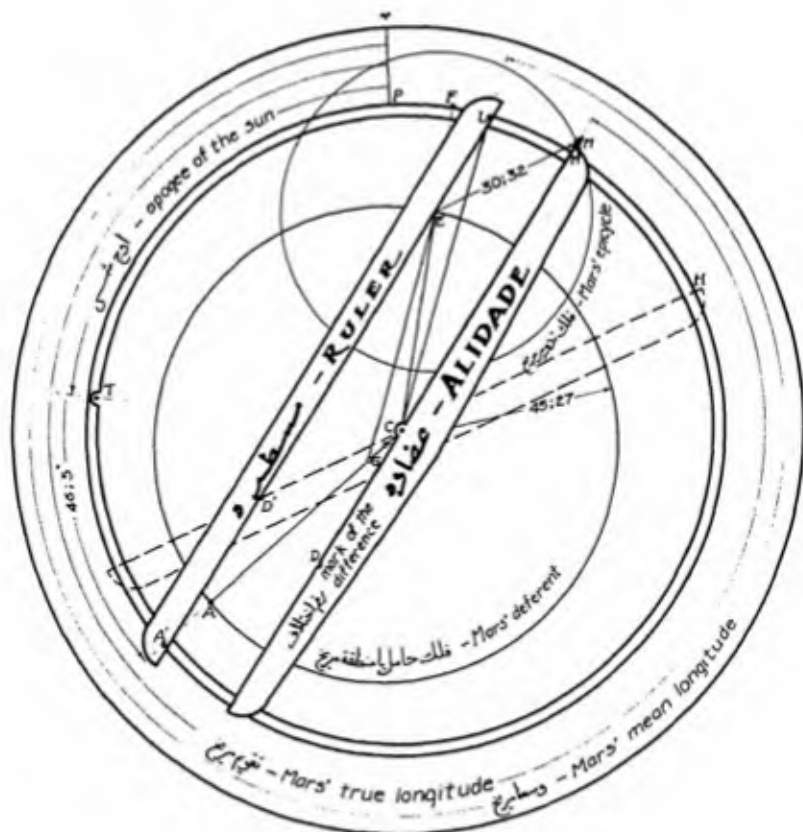


Figure 9. The Instrument, Set Up for Finding Mars' True Longitude

longitude, L, on the divisions of the ring. Place the ruler so that its edge is alongside the planet's equant-center, G,

C O M M E N T A R Y

and simultaneously parallel to the alidade edge. Where the ruler intersects the deferent, E, make the center-mark. This locates the planet's epicycle center at the given time.

For a superior planet turn the head of the alidade, that end of it opposite the side on which the difference marks (cf. f. 12r:9) have been made, until it reaches the mean solar longitude, H, and mark on the plate the point where the difference mark, D', then lies. Now put the ruler so that its edge lies along D and E, and rotate the alidade until it is parallel to the ruler. Then the intersection M of the head of the alidade with the divisions of the ring gives the required true longitude. For the vector D'C has been constructed in magnitude and direction equal to the vector EM from the epicycle center to the planet, and side CM of parallelogram CD'EM gives the direction of the vector sum of CE and D'C. And since EM is parallel to CH, EM has the required direction of the mean sun.

For the inferior planets, Venus and Mercury, the construction is of the same sort, bearing in mind that their mean longitude is the mean longitude of the sun. The same figure may be used to illustrate the configuration, although of course it will no longer be to scale. Now L is the sun's mean longitude and arc PA'H is the compound anomaly.

23. The Planetary Equations (f. 21v:8 - 22r:11)

The term equation (ta'dīl) was in general used in ancient and medieval astronomy to denote a correction, in general small, applied to a function representing some phenomenon. The usage has survived in modern astronomy in such expressions as "the equation of time".

A planet's equation in longitude was defined as the difference between its true and mean longitudes. The equation was

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

in turn made up of two components. The first equation, or equation of the center, is that caused by the eccentric equant; the second equation is the effect of the planet's motion on the epicycle. (Cf. [4], p.96.) Clearly the algebraic sum of the first and second equations equals the equation of the planet.

All zījies (astronomical handbooks) contained tables of both equations, essential for the computation of true longitudes. In addition, since the second equation is dependent on the first, a fairly involved interpolation scheme was necessary, to estimate the effect of the first equation on the second. It is the great advantage of an analog computer such as the equatorium that true longitudes are determined without the interposition of the equation or its components at all.

Nevertheless, should the user want to find the equations with the instrument he can do so by following the instructions in Chapter II,6. The author may have had in mind an individual who is computing a position accurately with a zīj, but who wants a quick, crude check of his partial results.

For whatever reason, having made the prescribed marks, at L, the mean position in Figure 9, and F, the projection of the epicycle center on the ring, it is clear that the arcs LF and FM are the first and second equations respectively.

When a mean position was measured from the apsidal line of the particular planet it was called the center, here arc A'HL. Addition of the first equation to the center gave the adjusted center, here arc A'HF.

The closing statement of the chapter, that if the adjusted mean longitude is subtracted from the sun's mean (for the superior planets), or from the compound anomaly (for the inferior planets), the adjusted anomaly remains, is equivalent

to the valid expression

$$PA'H = PA'F + FA'H.$$

24. The Lunar Equations (f. 22r:2)

In the ancient and medieval lunar theory the terms first equation and second equation did not denote angles analogous to those associated with the same terms in the planetary theory.

The lunar anomaly was not laid off from the epicyclic apogee of the model. Ptolemy found it necessary instead to count the anomaly from an epicyclic apogee as determined with respect to the "point opposite" (N on Figure 1), not with respect to the center of the universe, C. (Cf. [41], p.195). The first lunar equation was defined as the angular displacement in the epicyclic apogee caused by this situation. (See [23], f. 78v). On Figure 1 it is angle CEN. And since CH has been constructed parallel to EN, angle BCP also equals the first equation. But this angle, being a central angle on the plate, is measured by arc PB. P is evidently the "second mark" of our passage in the text, and B is the "mark of the beginning of the anomalistic motion", i.e. the statement in the manuscript is valid.

The second lunar equation was defined as the effect of the anomaly on the mean longitude, provided that the epicycle center were at maximum distance from the center of the universe. Since, in general, the actual distance was less than the maximum, in using the lunar tables it was necessary to add to the second equation a suitable correction. On the configuration on the instrument, however, this second equation does not appear as such, and the author of the manuscript makes no mention of it.

25. The Latitude of the Moon (f. 22r:13 - 22v:7)

The moon's orbit can be thought of as lying in a plane which makes a fixed angle of about five degrees with the plane of the ecliptic. The line of nodes, the intersection between the two planes, is not fixed, but rotates slowly in a negative direction with respect to the vernal point. Let β be the moon's latitude, λ its longitude, and λ_n the longitude of the ascending node, the ecliptic point through which the moon passes in going from southern to northern latitudes. Then we have

$$(1) \quad \sin \beta = \sin 5^\circ \sin (\lambda - \lambda_n) = \sin 5^\circ \sin \omega,$$

an exact spherical-trigonometric relation involving ω , the argument of the latitude, the moon's ecliptic distance from the ascending node.

In computing lunar latitudes Ptolemy did not use (1), but the equivalent of the expression

$$(2) \quad \beta = 5^\circ \sin \omega,$$

a reasonably good approximation. (Cf. [43], ed. of Halma, vol.i, p.316).

We have already described how to find λ and λ_n . Once put on the ring of the instrument, their differences can be noted directly. All versions of the text (f. 22r:13, NS p.277) say add, rather than subtract, λ and λ_n . This usage is explained by recalling that the motion of the node is contrary to the order of the zodiacal signs. Hence the nodal positions are to be plotted, as we would say, negatively, and algebraic subtraction in this case becomes addition.

Having determined ω , to complete the operation rotate the

COMMENTARY

alidade until its pointer crosses the graduations of the ring at the point corresponding to ω . Then note at which of the latitude lines the edge of the alidade crosses the moon's latitude circle described in Section 12 above. The result is the lunar latitude.

The operation is pictured in Figure 10, where we note that

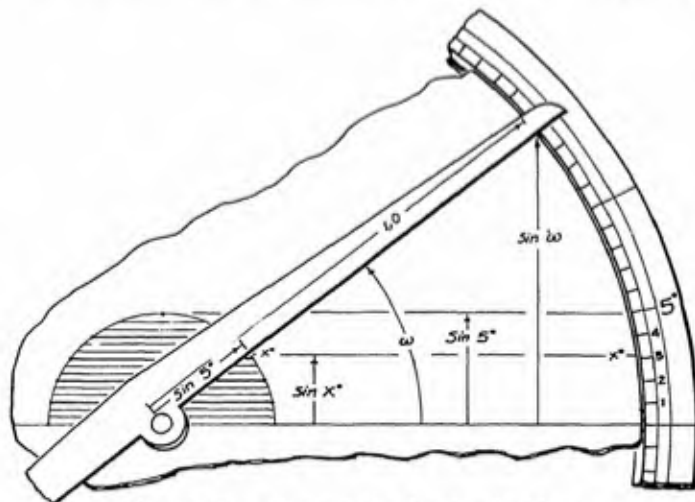


Figure 10. Use of the Latitude Lines

by similar triangles and use of the properties of the latitude lines (cf. Section 12),

$$\frac{\sin x}{\sin \omega} = \frac{\sin 5^\circ}{1,0} ,$$

or

$$(3) \quad \sin x = \sin 5^\circ \sin \omega .$$

Now comparison of expressions (1) and (3) shows that $x = \beta$,

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

that is, Kāshī's process utilizes the exact expression for determining the lunar latitude. In theory it is better than the result of using expression (2).

In the original version of the Nuzhah (NS, p.277) the method of determining the lunar latitude is as follows. Elevate the alidade so that it makes an angle of five degrees with the equating diameter. Mark on the edge of the alidade the point corresponding to w on the lunar latitude scale. Project this point parallel to the equating diameter on to the divisions of the ring. The number on this scale corresponding to the projection is the lunar latitude. It is easy to show that this process also yields the result of applying (3).

The Chaucer equatorium manuscript [42] gives a method of determining the lunar latitude as resulting from (2). There is no provision for the computation of planetary latitudes.

26. Planetary Latitudes in the Almagest

Chapter II,7 is by far the largest section of our text, taking up about a quarter of the entire second treatise. That this is the case is not surprising, for the topic of which it treats, planetary latitudes, is the complicated result of a complicated phenomenon. In determining planetary longitudes it is convenient to regard all motion as taking place in the plane of the ecliptic, which has the effect of making the problem a two-dimensional one. This cannot be done with the motion in latitude. The accompanying theory assumes that the planes of both deferent and epicycle make small but non-zero angles with the ecliptic and with each other, some of the angles being variable.

COMMENTARY

Ptolemy regarded the latitude of a planet at any instant as being the algebraic sum of two or three component parts, known as the first latitude (β_1), second latitude (β_2) and, in the case of the inferior planets, the third latitude (β_3). In order to define these components it will be necessary for us first to introduce a number of other terms.

It was customary to designate as first diameter of the epicycle, the line of true epicyclic apsides, that is, the diameter joining the true epicyclic apogee and perigee. In Figure 11, BC, B'C', and B''C'' are three positions of the first diameter. The second diameter of the epicycle is the diameter perpendicular to the first ([4], pp.61, 64). Examples from the same figure are DF, D'F' and D''F''.

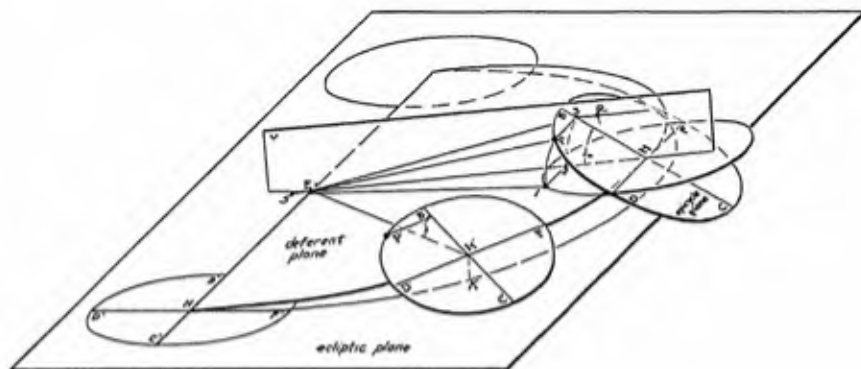


Figure 11. The Tilted Deferent and Epicycle

The first latitude is the angle made by the ecliptic plane

with the line joining the center of the universe and the epicycle center. In other words, β_1 is the portion of the total latitude due to the deviation (hereafter denoted by i) the angle at the line of nodes between the deferent and ecliptic planes.

The second latitude is the component due to the inclination (denoted by j), the tipping of the epicycle about its second diameter, the latter being maintained parallel to the ecliptic plane in the case of the superior planets.

With the two inferior planets, however, a third latitude is involved, caused by the obliquity, a tilting of the epicycle about its first diameter.

A useful concept is that of the center of latitude, denoted by $\bar{\omega}$ and defined as being the distance on the ecliptic from the ascending node of a planet to the true longitude of its epicycle center. In Figure 12 the expression

$$\bar{\omega} = \angle NEC = \angle NEA + \angle AEC$$

holds identically for all positions of C and A. Angle AEC is called the adjusted center and is denoted by $\bar{\lambda}_a$. In the case of the inferior planets, $\bar{\omega} = \bar{\lambda}_a + 90^\circ$, the line of apsides and the line of nodes being for them perpendicular. For the other planets the angles between these two lines are given in the table on f. 22v.

Chapter II,2 can be regarded as comprising four sections. The first, f. 22r:13 - 22v:7, disposes of the lunar latitude. This we have already commented on, in Section 25. The second section, f. 22v:7 - 25r:11, the longest and most involved of the four, describes simultaneously the determination of the latitudes of the superior planets and β_2 for the inferior planets. We separate the commentary on this section into two

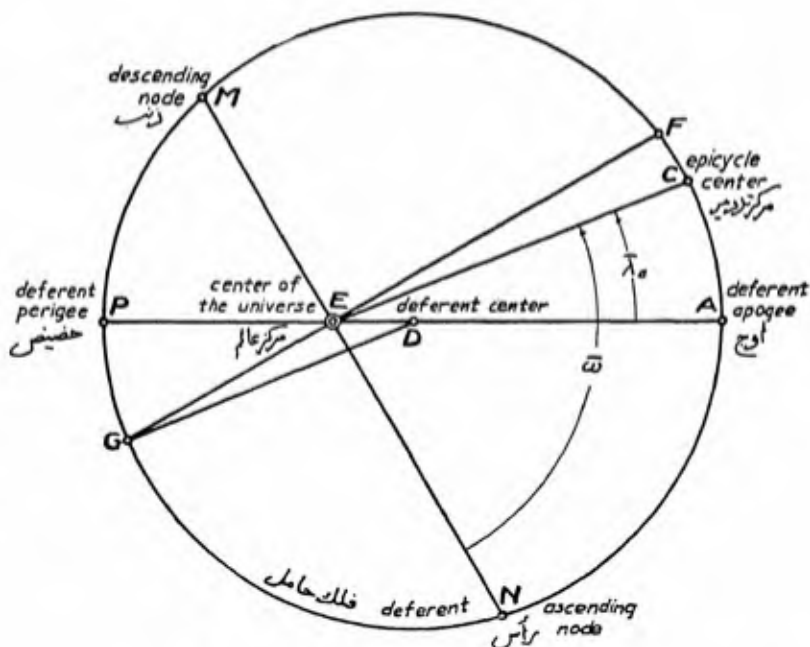


Figure 12. The Planetary Nodes

parts, Sections 28 and 30 below. The third section, f. 25r:11 - 26r:7, explains how to determine β_3 for an inferior planet and is discussed by us in Section 29. Finally f. 26r:7 - 26v:6 has to do with β_1 for an inferior planet. As being the simplest operation of the planetary latitude group, we describe it in the section immediately following this.

27. The First Latitude of the Inferior Planets (f. 26r:7 - 26v:6)

The geometric model used in the *Almagest* for the inferior planets has the deferent plane seesawing through a small angle north and south of the ecliptic plane about an axis in the

ecliptic plane perpendicular to the (deferent) line of apsides and passing through the center of the universe. The deviation of the deferent plane is given by the expression (cf. [8], p.199)

$$(4) \quad i = i_m \sin \bar{\omega}, \quad i_m = \begin{cases} 0;10^\circ & \text{for Venus,} \\ -0;45 & \text{for Mercury.} \end{cases}$$

Then, if in Figure 11, H' is the location of the epicycle center at a given time, in the spherical triangle $NH'K$, arc $H'K$ is β_1 , the desired first latitude, angle $H'KN$ is a right angle, and since i (angle $H'NK$) is small the approximate equality

$$(5) \quad \beta_1 \approx i \sin \bar{\omega} = (i_m \sin \bar{\omega}) \sin \bar{\omega} = i_m \sin^2 \bar{\omega}$$

subsists. This is the Ptolemaic theory.

The construction described in our text yields a result which is very slightly different. The alidade is elevated from the equating diameter by an angle equal to $\bar{\omega}$. We then note at which of the latitude lines the edge of the alidade intersects the proper latitude circle (cf. Section 12). Suppose the designation of this latitude line is x . This number will then satisfy the expression

$$(6) \quad \sin x = \sin i_m \sin \bar{\omega},$$

the transformation being of the same sort as that described for the lunar latitude in Section 25 above.

Now put the alidade perpendicular to the equating diameter and mark on its edge the point where the x latitude line crosses it. The distance from the mark to the plate center will then be $\sin x$. Return the alidade to its original position so that it makes an angle $\bar{\omega}$ with the equating diameter, and note the latitude line on which the mark falls. If this is the y latitude line y is the desired first latitude.

C O M M E N T A R Y

The second part of the operation is an iteration of the first with i_m replaced by x and x replaced by y . Hence we have

$$\begin{aligned}(7) \quad \sin y &= \sin x \cdot \sin \bar{\omega} = (\sin i_m \cdot \sin \bar{\omega}) \sin \bar{\omega} \\ &= \sin i_m \cdot \sin^2 \bar{\omega}.\end{aligned}$$

Comparison of expression (5) with (7) and the small size of i_m verifies the approximate equality of the results obtained with the two expressions.

In practice the construction is completely out of the question because of the minute semicircle required to be drawn on the plate. Even from a strictly theoretical point of view, what was justified in the case of the lunar latitude cannot be defended here. In both cases a right spherical triangle was involved, the solution of which involved an expression analogous to (6). But (4) is a device for giving a simple harmonic motion, and is not an approximate equality obtained from an accurate expression such as (6).

28. The Second Latitude of the Inferior Planets (f. 22v:7 - 25r:11)

In Figure 11 three positions of a planetary epicycle are shown, its center lying at N, H, and H'. In the first position the inclination j , the angle the first diameter makes with the radius vector from the center of the universe to the epicycle center, is zero. In the second case it has taken the maximum value, j_m , and the third case illustrates a general position intermediate between the two. In all three situations the second diameter (D''F'', DF, and D'F') is shown parallel to the ecliptic plane, hence β_3 and the obliquity are zero. Values

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

of j_m for each planet are to be found in the table on f. 23r. They are identical with those of the Almagest ([43], ed. of Halma vol.ii, p.255). In the transcription we have put a minus sign in parentheses before the entry for Venus so that the ultimate result will have the proper sign, north being taken as positive. A precise and general statement of the value of j , angle B'H'E, for all positions on the deferent, is

$$(8) \quad j(\tilde{\lambda}_a) = j_m \sin \tilde{\lambda}_a = j_m \sin (\tilde{\omega} - 90^\circ) = -j_m \cos \tilde{\omega}$$

for the inferior planets, and

$$(9) \quad j(\tilde{\omega}) = j_m \sin \tilde{\omega}$$

for the superior planets. Note that for an inferior planet maximum inclination occurs when the epicycle center is on the nodal line, in contrast to the situation pictured in Figure 11. This figure, however, shows all the elements affecting the latitude ($\beta = \beta_1 + \beta_2$) of a superior planet. For the intermediate position shown, $\tilde{\omega}$ is the arc NK, the inclination, angle B'H'E, is

$$(\angle BHE) \sin \angle NEK,$$

and β is the angle P'E makes with the ecliptic plane. Also, if the relative position of the ecliptic plane there shown is ignored, the same figure may be used to illustrate the determination of the second latitude of an inferior planet.

Ptolemy regarded as prohibitively complicated a direct, general computation and tabulation of β_2 as a function of two variables, $\tilde{\lambda}_a$ and α . He therefore adopted the simplification sketched below, the ensuing sacrifice of accuracy not being large. He computed β_2 for general values of α , but for $\tilde{\lambda}_a = 90^\circ$,

C O M M E N T A R Y

i.e. for the position of the epicycle center at H which gives maximum inclination of the first diameter, hence maximum β_2 . Here this $\max \beta_2(\alpha)$ is the angle PE makes with the deferent plane. He then defines the second latitude in general as

$$(10) \quad \beta_2(\bar{\lambda}_a, \alpha) = \max \beta_2(\alpha) \cdot \sin \bar{\lambda}_a,$$

expressed in modern notation.

Kāshī finds $\max \beta_2$ for a general α by means of a clever construction in the manner of descriptive geometry in which the single plane of the instrument's plate is regarded as containing the planes of the deferent, the plane denoted by v in Figure 11, and the plane of the epicycle. The equating diameter (UC in Figure 13) represents the intersection between v and the deferent plane, with H (the center of the instrument) representing the center of the epicycle. E is the latitude point (cf. Section 13) of the particular planet being dealt with, so placed that EH equals the distance (along the perpendicular to the line of nodes) from the center of the universe to the deferent of the planet. The plane v is folded down into the plane of the plate, about EH, in such fashion that its trace with the epicycle plane takes the position H3. And the plane of the epicycle is rotated into the deferent plane through an angle of j_m about its second diameter DF so that its first diameter takes the position BC.

If, now, the true length of PE (in Figure 11) can be constructed, as well as the perpendicular from P to the plane of the deferent, then the problem will be as well as solved. For if a right triangle is constructed with PE as hypotenuse and altitude equal to the perpendicular just referred to, the acute angle at its base will be the desired $\max \beta_2$.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

To this end the alidade is put so that its pointer crosses the ring at the graduation corresponding to the amount of the anomaly (α). The "first mark" (1 in Figure 13) is then made on the plate at the position of the permanent difference mark on the alidade edge. This makes $H1$ equal in length to the epicycle radius of the planet. Now make the "second mark" (2 on Figure 13), being the projection of 1 on the equating diameter.

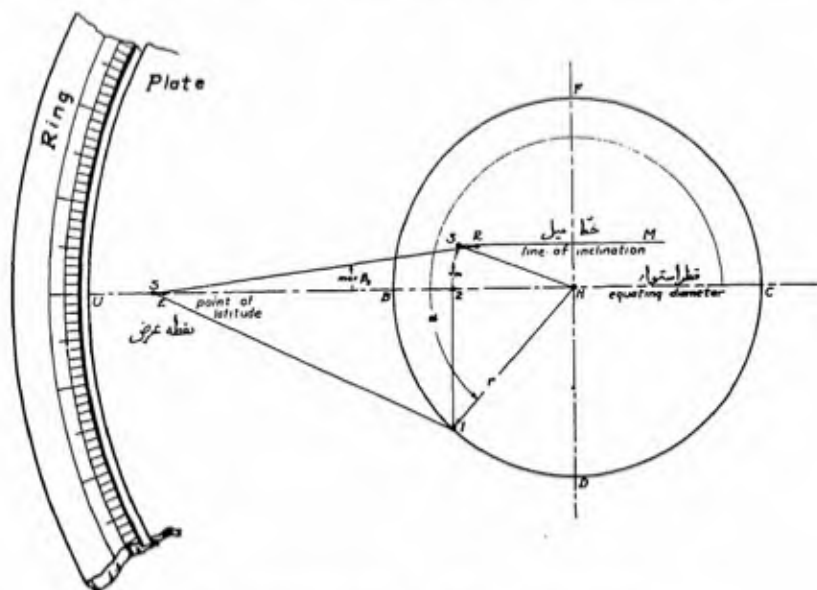


Figure 13. Construction for the Planetary Latitudes

By use of the alidade make the "third mark", 3, on the plate so that angle $3H2 = j_m$ and $H2 = H3$. Through point 3 draw a line $M3$ parallel to the equating diameter. The distance between this pair of parallel lines is the altitude of the desired right triangle.

C O M M E N T A R Y

To find the hypotenuse of the triangle mark point S the "substitute for the latitude point" on the equating diameter so that $S2 = E3$. It is as though, when the epicycle is rotated into the deferent plane, the right triangle EP3 also is flattened down into the deferent plane without change of size, the vertex E being made to slide outward along EH, 3 taking the position 2, and P the position 1. Then point S1 is the true length of EP in Figure 13.

Now, with center S and radius S1 draw an arc cutting M3 in R. Then the angle RSH is the desired $\max \beta_2(\alpha)$, and it can be measured in the usual manner by placing the alidade parallel to SR and noting the point on the divisions of the ring where the pointer of the alidade falls.

The final steps in the determination consist of performing an operation analogous to the lunar latitude determination, the only differences being that the lunar latitude semicircle of radius $\sin 5^\circ$ is replaced by a mark on the alidade edge whose distance from the plate center is $\sin \max \beta_2(\alpha)$. Thus the resulting β_2 from the instrument is given by the expression

$$(11) \quad \sin \beta_2(\lambda_a, \alpha) = \sin \max \beta_2(\alpha) \cdot \sin \lambda_a,$$

which leads to a result differing slightly from that of (10). The criticism made of the β_1 determination in Section 27 above applies also to this section of the text.

The passage concludes (f. 25r:3-25r:11) with the usual complicated rules for determining the sign of the result. Negative numbers were not known to the medieval scientists. In cases where a result involved one of two directions, the result itself having issued from a combination of two or more elements, each with a direction of its own, there was nothing for it but to enumerate all possibilities in a set of rules.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

The term parecliptic, occurring in this passage, requires explanation. Following Nallino ([3], vol.ii, p.352) we translate by it the word mumaththal, which is a contraction of al-falak al-mumaththal li-falak al-burūj. It is a sort of reference circle, one for each planet, lying in the plane of the ecliptic and having its center at the center of the universe. Apparently the Islamic astronomers made use of the concept because they thought of the universe in terms of a set of more or less concentric and overlapping shells, each shell containing the deferent and epicycle of a planet. On the parecliptic of each planet were projected the positions of that planet. If in any context the word ecliptic is substituted for parecliptic the essential meaning will be unchanged.

29. The Third Latitude of the Inferior Planets (f. 25r:11 - 26r:7)

In approximating the final component of the latitude Ptolemy neglects the simultaneous but small effects on it of the first two components. Thus in Figure 14, which shows the upper half (BPC) of the epicycle tilted about its first diameter (BC), the plane of EON' may be considered either as the plane of the deferent or as that of the ecliptic. E is the center of the universe, P a general position of the planet corresponding to an anomaly of α . EM is tangent to the epicycle, and the right spherical triangle OM'N' represents a portion of the celestial sphere, N' being the projection of M' on the ecliptic arc ON'. OM, which is approximately equal to q , its projection on the ecliptic, is the "second equation" of the planet. Clearly q is a function of α .

The obliquity defined in Section 26 above is measured by the spherical angle M'ON'. This angle varies sinusoidally as

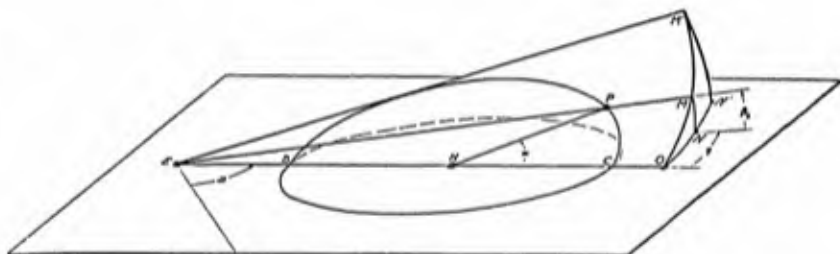


Figure 14. The Epicycle Tilted for the
Third Latitude Component

H travels around the deferent, being zero when H is at the nodes and a maximum or minimum when it is in the line of apsides.

Ptolemy treats the spherical triangles MON and $M'ON'$ as though they were plane triangles, using what is tantamount to the crudely approximate relation

$$\frac{MN}{q} = \frac{M'N'}{ON'} ,$$

or

$$(12) \quad \beta_3 = MN \approx q \left(\frac{M'N'}{ON'} \right) = qk$$

for any fixed obliquity. The number k depends on the size of the epicycle, the deferent, the eccentricity and the maximum obliquity. Making the additional assumption that, for fixed q , β_3 varies directly as the obliquity, angle $M'ON'$, his *Almagest* tables ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.ii, p.414; [3], vol.ii, p.250) are computed as though

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

$$(13) \quad \beta_3(a, \bar{\omega}) = kq \sin \bar{\omega}, \quad k = \begin{cases} 1/18;24 & \text{for Venus} \\ -0;6,8 & \text{when } 0^\circ \leq \bar{\omega} \leq 180^\circ \\ -0;7,30 & \text{when } 180^\circ \leq \bar{\omega} \leq 360^\circ \end{cases} \text{ for Mercury}$$

were the general definition of the third latitude for Venus and Mercury. The opposite signs for k imply opposite tilting of the epicycle planes in the two cases. The two different values of k for Mercury are to compensate roughly for the eccentric deferent of this planet. As the epicycle leaves the ascending node it travels toward the apogee, hence, in general it is then farther from the center of the universe than after leaving the descending node. Thus the same obliquity produces less effect at the greater distance, so the value of k is smaller in absolute value on the apogee side of the line of nodes. The eccentricity of Venus is so small that the corresponding effect for it is neglected.

Except for differences in parameters, Kāshī's method is a graphical duplication of the whole scheme. The text prescribes taking a third of a sixth of Venus' second equation, i.e. $1/18$. For Mercury one is to multiply the second equation by either $0;7^\circ$ or $0;8^\circ$ depending respectively on whether the epicycle center is or is not on the same part of the deferent as is the apogee.

It is to be noticed that in two cases Kāshī's values for k differ from the Ptolemaic ones by as much as a digit in the first sexagesimal place.

It then remains only to impose on the extreme obliquity thus found the now familiar sinusoidal transformation which employs the latitude lines on the plate. The final result is thus implicit in the expression

$$(14) \quad \sin \beta_3(a, \bar{\omega}) = \sin kq \cdot \sin \bar{\omega},$$

which is very nearly equivalent to (13).

30. Latitude of the Superior Planets (f. 22v:7 - 25r:11)

The Almagest arrangements for the superior planets are simpler on two counts than those for the inferior planets. For one thing, there is no obliquity, hence $\beta_3 = 0$. And secondly, both β_1 and β_2 vary (roughly) sinusoidally with $\bar{\omega}$, not one with $\bar{\omega}$ and the other with $\bar{\lambda}_a$ as above. In Figure 11, for instance, when the epicycle center is at N both β_1 and β_2 are zero; at H both are maximal. In the general position H', β_1 equals the great circle arc KH', which is approximately equal to $i_m \sin \bar{\omega}$. Ptolemy therefore computes as previously $\max \beta_2(\alpha)$ by finding the angle EP makes with the deferent plane. Now he takes

$$\max \beta(\alpha) = \max \beta_1 + \max \beta_2(\alpha) = i_m + \max \beta_2(\alpha)$$

for general values of α . Finally he defines

$$(15) \quad \beta(\alpha, \bar{\omega}) = \max \beta(\alpha) \cdot \sin \bar{\omega}.$$

But, in contrast to the inferior planets, the deferents of the superior planets are not symmetrically placed on the line of nodes; in general, if the epicycle center is on the northern part of the deferent (i.e. $0^\circ < \bar{\omega} < 180^\circ$), it will be farther from the center of the universe than when it occupies a corresponding place on the southern portion ($180^\circ < \bar{\omega} < 360^\circ$). Hence both Ptolemy and Kāshī use two different values for EH (Figures 11 and 13) for each superior planet, depending on whether it is in the first or last two quadrants. These pairs of distances are the distances of the latitude points given in the table on f. 9r and discussed by us in Section 13. Except for this, Kāshī's construction for $\max \beta_2(\alpha)$ is as explained in Section 28 above. To this add the corresponding constant i_m . Then perform the customary transformation on it involving $\sin \bar{\omega}$ to obtain the β implicit in the expression

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

$$(16) \quad \sin \beta(\alpha, \bar{\omega}) = \sin \max \beta(\alpha) \cdot \sin \bar{\omega},$$

which differs very slightly from (15) for the small β involved.

One passage, f. 23v:3 - 23v:11, is puzzling. It looks as though the author wants the line of inclination to make an angle of i_m with the equating diameter. This seems pointless. It is true that i_m is involved, but it should be added to the $\max \beta_2(\alpha)$, angle RSH, not to the line of inclination. Also, he seems to want the line of inclination cut off in length equal to the epicycle radius. This would do no harm, but it appears unnecessary.

31. Planetary Distances (f. 26v:13 - 27v:12)

For any given time, the distance from the earth to the moon is the length of DE in Figure 1, where this figure represents the lunar configuration at the given instant. In like manner, for any planet the earth-planet distance is the length of line D'E in Figure 9. These distances having been measured in sixtieths of the plate radius, to convert them into distances measured in the standard scale, sixtieths of the respective deferent-radius, it is necessary to multiply each by a proper norming coefficient. These are given by the author in the table on f. 27v and by us in Table 2, Column 2. Determination of the solar distance has already been discussed, in Section 20 above.

32. Stations and Retrogradations (f. 28r:1 - 30r:1)

When a planet's forward motion in the zodiac ceases, it is said to be muqīm, stationary. It then becomes retrograde (rājī), having passed through the first, or retrograde station (maqām-i rājī). After a time it again becomes stationary, passing through the second or direct station (maqām-i istiḡāmat); thence

COMMENTARY

it resumes forward motion and is said to be direct (mustaqīm).

Our author devotes a chapter to the use of the Plate of Heavens in computing the time of reaching a station. He follows implicitly the directions given in the Nuzha, which is based on the theory of Ptolemy, who in turn bases his development on a proposition he attributes to Apollonius of Perga (c. 200 B.C.). In substance, this elegant theorem ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.ii, p.312) states that if the deferent center and the center of the universe coincide, then the planet (P in Figure 15) will be stationary when

$$\frac{m}{n} = \frac{v_e}{v_p} ,$$

v_e being the angular velocity of the epicycle center E about O, v_p the angular velocity of P about E, and OT being perpendicular

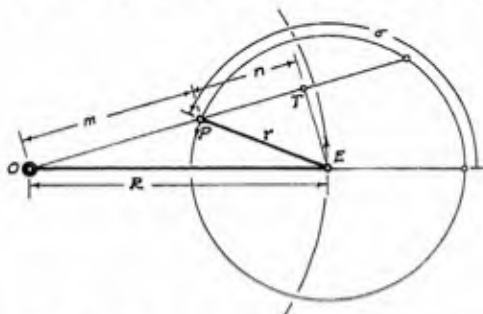


Figure 15. Diagram for Apollonius' Theorem

to ET. The station (maqām) is σ , the value of the epicyclic anomaly when the above expression obtains. Of course this is a simplification of the actual Ptolemaic model, for in the latter the center of the universe is displaced from the deferent center by a distance d . So in general OE is not a constant,

but a function of λ , here the longitude of the epicycle center measured from the deferent apogee. We call this variable radius $\rho(\lambda)$, and note that $\rho(0^\circ) = R + d$ and $\rho(180^\circ) = R - d$. Moreover, Apollonius' theorem applies only approximately to this model, and the location of the station on the epicycle is also a function of λ , $\sigma(\lambda)$ say. Ptolemy computes directly only three values of this function for each planet: $\sigma(0^\circ)$, $\sigma(180^\circ)$, and $\sigma(v_d) = \sigma$, now the location of the station when the epicycle center is at the mean distance. For intermediate values of the argument he uses what amounts to the interpolation scheme

$$(17) \quad \sigma(\lambda) = \begin{cases} \sigma + \frac{[\rho(\lambda) - R][\sigma(0^\circ) - \sigma]}{d}, & 0 \leq \lambda \leq v_d, \\ \sigma + \frac{[\rho(\lambda) - R][\sigma - \sigma(180^\circ)]}{d}, & v_d \leq \lambda \leq 180^\circ. \end{cases}$$

Thus he makes the change in $\sigma(\lambda)$ proportional to the change in $\rho(\lambda)$ for corresponding λ . (Cf. [3], vol.ii, p.246).

The arrangements in our manuscript are somewhat different, at least in appearance. On f. 29r is a table of $\sigma(0^\circ)$ and $\sigma(180^\circ)$, reproduced below together with the corresponding values determined by Ptolemy ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.ii, p.355), al-Battānī ([3], vol.ii, p.138), and Ulugh Beg [54]. It should be remembered that these numbers depend on four parameters, not only on d and r , but also on the mean motions and mean anomalous rates of the planets involved. Kāshī makes no mention or use of an independently computed $\sigma(v_d)$; instead he puts

$$(18) \quad \sigma(\lambda) = \sigma(0^\circ) + \frac{[\rho(0^\circ) - \rho(\lambda)][\sigma(180^\circ) - \sigma(0^\circ)]}{2d}.$$

The difference between this and expression (17) is more apparent than real. In fact, if $\sigma(v_d) = [\sigma(180^\circ) - \sigma(0^\circ)]/2$, they are equivalent, and Ptolemy's values for $\sigma(v_d)$ are practically the mean between his extreme values.

COMMENTARY

	$\sigma(0^\circ)$				$\sigma(180^\circ)$			
	Almagest	Kāshī	Ulugh Beg	al-Battānī	Almagest	Kāshī	Ulugh Beg	al-Battānī
♂	3 ^h 22,45 ^m	3 ^h 22,45 ^m	3 ^h 22,10 ^m	3 ^h 22,45 ^m	3 ^h 25,29 ^m	3 ^h 25,29 ^m	3 ^h 24,49 ^m	3 ^h 25,29 ^m
♂	4 ^h 4,5 ^m	4 ^h 7,6 ^m	4 ^h 3,40 ^m	4 ^h 4,5 ^m	4 ^h 7,11 ^m	4 ^h 10,11 ^m	4 ^h 6,51 ^m	4 ^h 7,11 ^m
♂	5 ^h 7,28 ^m	5 ^h 7,14 ^m	5 ^h 5,36 ^m	5 ^h 7,33 ^m	5 ^h 19,9 ^m	5 ^h 18,48 ^m	5 ^h 19,42 ^m	5 ^h 19,14 ^m
♂	5 ^h 15,51 ^m	5 ^h 15,45 ^m	5 ^h 16,12 ^m	5 ^h 15,53 ^m	5 ^h 18,21 ^m	5 ^h 18,27 ^m	5 ^h 18,4 ^m	5 ^h 18,21 ^m
♂	4 ^h 27,14 ^m	4 ^h 24,29 ^m	4 ^h 27,14 ^m	4 ^h 27,13 ^m	4 ^h 24,40 ^m	4 ^h 27,14 ^m	4 ^h 24,40 ^m	4 ^h 24,40 ^m

Table 3

The values laid out on the plate for $\rho(0^\circ)$, $\rho(180^\circ)$ and $2d$ are displayed on f. 28v for the convenience of the user. $\rho(\lambda)$, the "preserved distance", is to be obtained by direct measurement with the ruler.

The first and second stations, being symmetrically disposed on the epicycle with respect to the true (epicyclic) apogee, computation of the one for a given λ gives the other immediately.

The final step in the determination consists simply of evaluating $(\sigma(\lambda)-a)/\dot{a}$ where a is the anomaly for the time being and \dot{a} is the rate of change of a with respect to time. The result will be the time until station is reached, in the same units used to express \dot{a} .

Special remarks concerning Mercury (f. 28v:5, 29r:2) are occasioned by the oval deferent of this planet (see Figure 3), the effect of which is to bring the epicycle nearest the center of the universe at two different points, not at the deferent perigee as is the case with all other planets. These two points are about 120° away from the deferent apogee, as is inferred

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

from Kāshī's rule, and as can be verified by inspection of the last column in the Almagest table of Mercury's equations ([43], ed. of Halma. vol.ii, p.309).

33. The Planetary Sectors (f. 10r:2-11, 10v, 30r:2 - 31r:10)

The subject of Chapter II,10 in our text is treated in [28], which may be consulted for details by the reader. We content ourselves here with a minimum for understanding of the text, beginning with a restatement of the definitions with which the chapter begins.

For certain astrological purposes, it was customary to divide the deferent and the epicycle into four sectors each, called by our author apogee sectors (nitāqāt-i aujī) and epicyclic sectors (nitāqāt-i tadvīrī) respectively. There were two categories of sectors, those computed according to distance, and those according to velocity (ḥarakah), or, as our author puts it, movement (sayr).

In all cases the beginning of the first sector was at the (deferent or epicyclic) apogee, the beginning of the third sector at the perigee.

The beginnings of the second and fourth distance sectors on either the deferent or the epicycle were defined as those points at which an object moving on the circle in question is at its mean distance from the center of the universe.

For the velocity sectors, the beginnings of the second and fourth are those positions of a point moving on the deferent or epicycle at which its angular velocity, as viewed from the center of the universe, attains its mean value.

The endpoint of each first sector coincides with the beginning of the second, and so on.

The table on f. 10v locates the sector boundaries for all

C O M M E N T A R Y

categories. The entries have evidently been obtained from Kāshī's zīj ([23], f. 141v), uniformly rounded off to minutes. We next address ourselves to the question of how these values were determined.

The problem is simplest for the sun, which has no epicycle, hence no epicyclic sectors, and no equant. If d and R are the deferent eccentricity and radius respectively, then the arc of the deferent from the beginning of the first sector to the beginning of the second, that is, the amplitude of the first solar distance sector is

$$(19) \qquad 90^\circ + \arcsin \frac{d}{2R} .$$

This disposes of all other solar sectors of this category, for, as always, the sectors are symmetrically located with respect to the line of apsides. Hence the amplitudes of the first and fourth sectors are always equal, while the first and second are supplementary.

The amplitude of the first solar velocity sector is

$$(20) \qquad 90^\circ + \arcsin \frac{d}{R} .$$

With the planets, the location of the initial point of the second deferent distance sector can also be obtained from (19) above. For use in the zījēs, however, it was convenient to tabulate the angle subtended by the first sector at the equant rather than at the deferent center. For small d a good approximation to the former angle is

$$(21) \qquad 90^\circ + \arcsin \frac{3d}{2R} .$$

For a planetary deferent velocity sector the angle subtended by the first sector at the equant is approximately that given

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

by expression (20) above.

For the tabulated values of the epicycle distance and velocity sectors the expressions

$$(22) \quad 90^\circ + \arcsin \frac{r}{2(R+d)},$$

and

$$(23) \quad 90^\circ + \arcsin \frac{r}{R+d}$$

respectively have evidently been used by the original computer of the z_{ij} , where r is the epicycle radius.

In the z_{ij} itself the "equation" also is tabulated, that is, the variation in the results when $R+d$ is replaced by $R-d$. Something of the sort is necessary to take account of the variation in the distance from earth to epicycle center, a variation which causes small changes in the size of the sectors. For intermediate positions between the extremes of $R+d$ and $R-d$ an interpolation scheme was used which is not mentioned in our text. It is to this variation, however, which the author has reference in his statement on f. 30v:1.

Independent computations using Kāshī's parameters in the expressions above have resulted in a verification of all the entries in the text's table of sectors except for some involving Mercury and the moon, which, having special models, demand special treatment.

For Mercury's deferent distance sectors, the last column in the *Almagest* table of Mercury's equations ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.ii, p.309) measures the variation in the maximum size of the equation due to the epicycle as compared with its mean value. Hence any point at which this function vanishes marks a position at which the epicycle is at mean distance, i.e. the initial point of the second deferent distance sector.

COMMENTARY

Interpolation in this table yields a zero when the argument is $67;13^{\circ}$, a result reasonably close to our tabular value of $67;44^{\circ}$.

As for the deferent velocity sectors of Mercury, (19) above is applied as though it were valid for a non-circular as well as a circular deferent. Expressions (22) and (23) are used for the epicycle sectors of both Mercury and the moon.

Kāshī's definition of the initial point of the second lunar deferent distance sector is evidently taken to be the value of the double elongation at which the epicycle center will be at mean distance from the center of the universe. This is

$$\arccos \frac{d}{2R} = \arccos \left(\frac{10;19}{2(49;41)} \right) = 84;2^{\circ},$$

as required by the table.

In the *Almagest* table of lunar equations ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.i, p.316) the value of the double elongation which gives maximum displacement of the epicyclic apogee (Column 3 in the *Almagest* table) is 114° . This is our tabular entry for the moon's deferent velocity sector. In fact, however, the lunar epicycle travels on the deferent in such fashion that its angular velocity as viewed from the center of the universe is a constant. Hence the concept of deferent velocity sectors as defined above has no meaning. In some way Kāshī must have associated the 114° with the conditions which identify the mean angular velocity of the epicycle centers of the planets, but how he did so is not clear.

So much for the table. As for the instrument, since all deferents are marked on the plate, it is an easy matter to mark also the boundaries of the deferent sectors, as prescribed in the text (ff. 10r:2, 30v:2).

The epicycles as such do not appear on the instrument,

and to determine the epicycle sector of a planet at a given time recourse must be had to manipulations with the instrument. The author's directions in f. 30v:5 - 31r:2 have reference to a person standing at the periphery of the horizontally placed instrument, opposite the planet's epicycle center, and looking toward the center of the instrument. If the position of the planet is on his right this implies that the true longitude exceeds the adjusted mean longitude (i.e. the longitude of the epicycle center) and that the planet is in either the first or second epicyclic sector. If it is on the left it is in the third or fourth. Compare the distances of the planet and the epicycle center from the center of the universe. If the first exceeds the second the planet is in either the first or fourth epicyclic distance sector. If the reverse is the case it is in either the second or third. The combination of these two criteria suffices to locate the planet's epicyclic distance sector. The author gives no directions for the velocity sectors.

The terms "increasing" (or "increased") and "decreasing" (or "decreased") as used in the last part of this chapter (f. 31r:3-9) are explained by Bīrūnī in [4](p.203). "Increasing in computation" means that the equation is positive. The author is here referring to the epicycle sectors only. "Increased in magnitude" refers to the celestial object's apparent size, which varies inversely with its distance. When it is in the second or third epicyclic sector its apparent size will be increased over its mean value, hence the term.

34. Prediction of Lunar Eclipses (f. 31r:11 - 33r:13)

A lunar eclipse occurs whenever the moon enters the shadow cast by the earth. If for any time during the eclipse the moon

COMMENTARY

is completely immersed in the shadow the eclipse is said to be total, otherwise it is partial. Our author seeks to describe eclipses to the extent of determining the times of (a) first contact of moon and shadow, (b) first totality, if the eclipse is total, (c) the middle of the eclipse, (d) the beginning of clearance, i.e. the end of totality, and (e) complete clearance. For a partial eclipse the magnitude also is desired.

Since the depth and duration of an eclipse is determined by how closely the broken line sun-earth-moon approaches straightness, it is clear that a necessary condition for a lunar eclipse is that sun and moon be in opposition, i.e. have longitudes differing by 180° . The condition is not sufficient, however, for the moon does not travel on the ecliptic, but along a second great circle which intersects the ecliptic at an angle of about five degrees. This circle rotates slowly westward so that the nodes, the points of intersection between the two circles, have a motion of about nineteen degrees per year. The moon's distance from the ecliptic, its latitude, is the element which determines whether or not an eclipse will occur at a given opposition.

Our author makes several simplifying assumptions. For one thing he regards the earth-moon distance as a constant, hence the apparent size of the lunar disk as viewed from the earth is also constant. The same sort of assumption for the earth-sun distance implies that the width of the shadow cone where it is cut by the moon is likewise a constant. These simplifications have the effect of making an essentially three-dimensional problem two dimensional, for now we can confine our attention to the surface of the sphere, concentric with the earth, in which the moon's center moves. As a final simplification, let Figure 16 represent to some scale a small

COMMENTARY

times, for in the same period the sun itself, hence the earth's shadow, will have made some progress along the ecliptic.

When an eclipse is partial, as in the one illustrated in Figure 16, its magnitude is the length of EC measured in (eclipse) digits, twelfths of the apparent lunar diameter. Figure 17, on the other hand, shows a total eclipse. Here

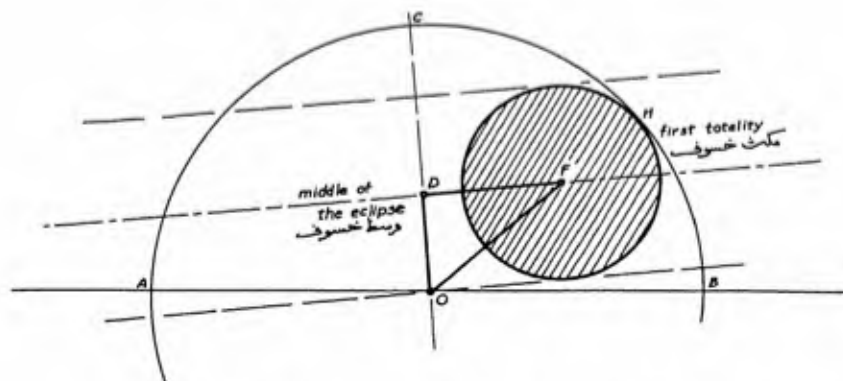


Figure 17. A Diagram for a Total Lunar Eclipse

the beginning of totality is of interest, and this occurs when the moon is tangent internally to the shadow circle, as at H. In both cases the approximate middle of the eclipse is marked by the arrival of the moon's center at D, this corresponding to the time of opposition. The ends of totality and of contact are located on the eastward side of OC symmetrically with their beginnings.

35. Lunar Eclipse Limits

With this background we now examine the text of Chapter

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

II,11, beginning with f. 31v:1, a statement to the effect that a necessary and sufficient condition that an eclipse occur is that the lunar latitude at opposition (β) be less than the sum of the apparent radii of moon (r_m) and shadow (r_s). The next sentence, f. 31v:5, looks corrupt, and comparison with the corresponding passage in NS (p.280) confirms our suspicion. It says:

If the lunar latitude at the conjunction is more than sixty-three minutes, (then) undoubtedly its distance from the node will be more than twelve degrees, and so there will be no eclipse. But if it is less than that and greater than twenty-nine minutes, then part of it will be eclipsed.

Although not explicitly stated, it is clear from the figures that a necessary and sufficient condition that totality be attained is that

$$r_s - r_m > \beta.$$

The numbers in the Nuzhah lead to the equations

$$\begin{aligned} r_s + r_m &= 63' \\ r_s - r_m &= 29', \end{aligned}$$

whose solution is $r_s = 46'$ and $r_m = 17'$, both numbers being rounded-off Ptolemaic parameters ([43], ed. of Halma, vol.1, p.395).

That the latitude condition for a partial eclipse is equivalent to the statement made in our text about the ecliptic distance from node to opposition may be demonstrated as follows.

COMMENTARY

Consider the right spherical triangle (Figure 18) formed on the celestial sphere by the node, the moon's center, and the projec-

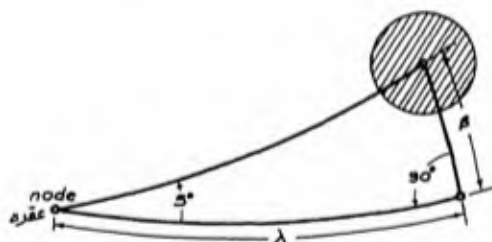


Figure 18. The Lunar Latitude Near Syzygy

tion of the latter on the ecliptic. The relation

$$\sin \lambda \approx \frac{\beta}{50}$$

subsists, since β and 50° are both small. Putting $\beta = 63'$ we obtain

$$\lambda = \arcsin (63/300) \approx 12^\circ,$$

as demanded by the text.

We are now in a position to investigate the condition with which Chapter II,11 opens, namely that if the opposition occurs during daylight it must be less than 2;4 hours after sunrise or before sunset. Violation of the condition implies that there will be no possibility of any part of even the longest eclipse taking place while the sun is below the horizon.

An eclipse of maximum duration is one for which first contact takes place when the elongation is sixty-three minutes of arc.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

Since the mean rate of elongation is about $13;10,15^{\circ} - 0;59,8^{\circ} = 12;11,27^{\circ}$ per day, half the length of the longest eclipse is about

$$\frac{1;3(24)}{12;11,27} = 2;4 \text{ hours.}$$

This is doubtless the origin of the number the author gives. It does not appear in the Nuzhah.

36. Lunar Eclipse Markings on the Ruler

A permanent mark (O in Figure 19) is placed on the ruler's edge at a distance of sixty-three parts (sixtieths of the plate radius) from the end. The mark of first totality (O") is put permanently on the ruler at a distance twenty-three parts from the same end. The segment OO" will be thirty-four parts in length, equal to the apparent diameter of the moon in minutes. It is divided into twelve equal segments, each one an eclipse digit.

37. Determination of the Lunar Eclipse Times

Suppose now that β for the time (t) of the opposition has been computed and is sufficiently small to indicate an eclipse. Set the alidade point of Aries on the ring. Put a mark O on the plate such that the segment DO is of length β measured in divisions of the alidade, taking a sixtieth of the plate radius for each minute of arc. Rotate the alidade through an angle of ninety degrees, and place the ruler so that the lunar eclipse mark on its edge coincides with O, and so that its end touches the edge of the alidade (at M). The triangle DOM is now a mechanical construction of the triangle having the same letters in Figure 16. Hence the length of DM on the instrument gives

COMMENTARY

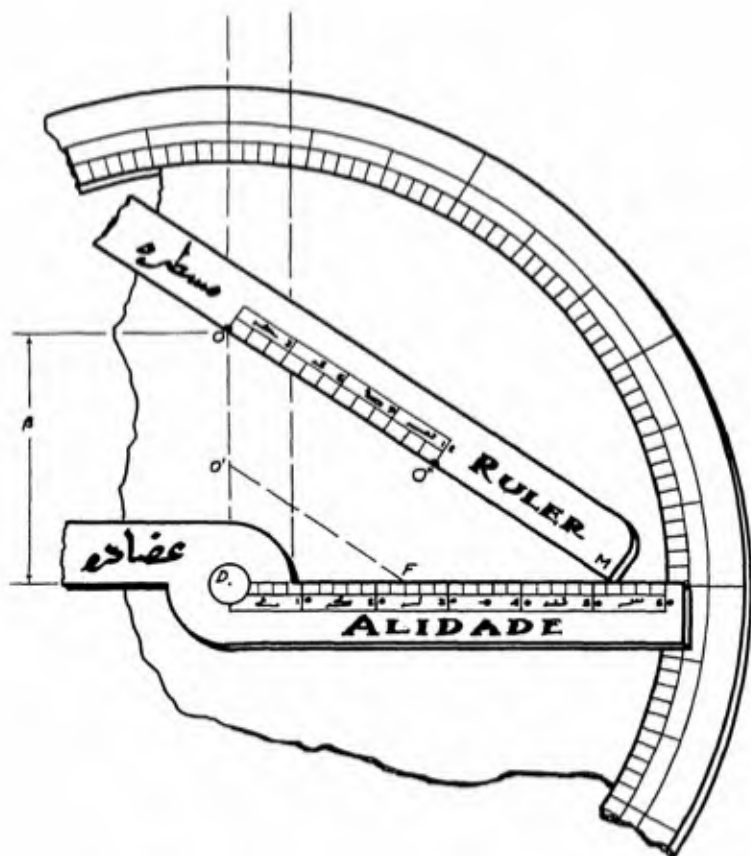


Figure 19. The Instrument Set Up for a Lunar Eclipse Determination

the elongation in minutes of arc at the instant of first (or last) contact. Since the rate of elongation is, very crudely, a half degree per hour, "depressing" (cf. Section 3) the length

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

of DM once and doubling the result (i.e. dividing by a half) will yield the elapsed time from first contact to the middle of the eclipse. This is what the text prescribes. Add the result to t and subtract it from t to get the times of day at which last and first contact take place respectively.

If the eclipse is total, an exactly analogous use is made of the mark of first totality (O'') instead of the lunar eclipse mark (O) to construct the triangle $O''FD$ (in Figure 19) congruent with OFD (in Figure 17). From it is obtained DM, the elongation at first totality, which also is converted into time by doubling and depressing. Addition to and subtraction of the result from t gives the times of day of last and first totality respectively.

For a partial eclipse the magnitude is measured very simply by sliding the end (M) of the ruler along the alidade until the ruler occupies the position indicated by the pair of dotted lines on Figure 19. The position of the mark O with respect to the digit scale on the ruler then gives the magnitude in digits directly. The validity of this procedure can be seen from Figure 16, where it will be observed that the eclipse magnitude is, approximately

$$EC = ED + DC = r_m + r_s - \beta = 63' - \beta,$$

which is the construction prescribed.

38. Parallax in the Altitude Circle (f. 35r:4 - 36r:5)

It is convenient here to break the order of the text and to insert appropriate comment on Chapter II,14, the substance of which is a preliminary to Section 39.

In Figure 20 assume the small circle with center C to be the terrestrial sphere. An observer at E takes the altitude of

COMMENTARY

a celestial body at S, the latter being at a distance SC from the center of the earth. With respect to the observer's

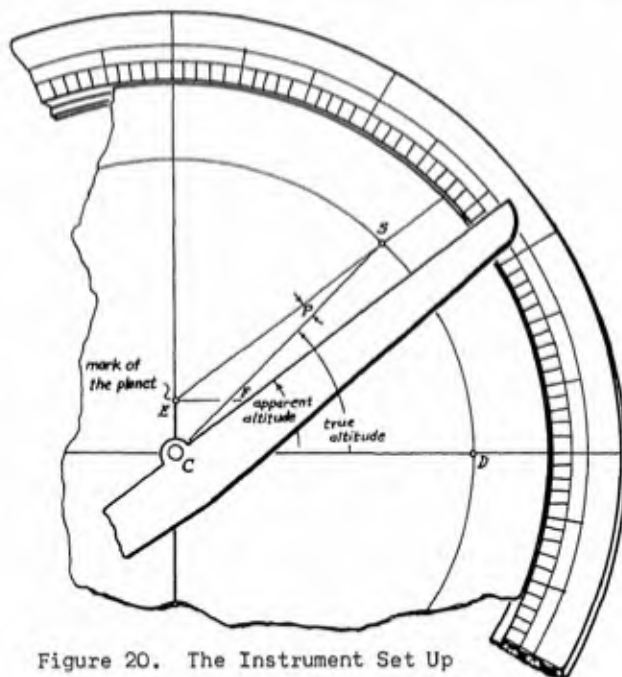


Figure 20. The Instrument Set Up
for a Parallax Determination

horizon, the tangent to the sphere at E, the altitude of S is angle SEF. As reckoned from the center of the earth, however, the altitude is SCD. The difference between these two angles is P, the parallax in the altitude circle. It is clear that P is a function of two variables, the earth-planet distance, and the altitude. For CS constant, P is maximum when the altitude is zero, taking a maximum value of, very nearly

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

$$\text{arc sin } \frac{EC}{CD}.$$

The operation described in Chapter II,14 consists essentially of making a scale representation of the situation set forth above, and our Figure 20 is sufficient supplement to the author's explanation.

It is of interest, however, to put down his parameters. For the three objects mentioned, horizontal parallax at mean distance will be

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{☾} & \text{arc sin } 0;1,2 = 0;59,13^{\circ} \\ \text{○} & \text{arc sin } 0;0,2 = 0;1,55^{\circ} \\ \text{♀} & \text{arc sin } 0;0,4 = 0;3,50^{\circ}, \end{array}$$

where mean distance has been taken as 1,0;0 for the sun and moon and as 1,0;0/2 for Venus, as prescribed in f. 35r:13.

Comparison of these numbers with corresponding entries in a table of parallaxes on f. 185v of Kāshī's zīj [23] show as close a correlation as can be expected. Horizontal lunar parallax at mean distance is there given as 0;59,59°. For the sun it is 0;2,15°, and this accords with our result of 0;1,55°, since the author says vaguely (f. 35r:9) that for the sun CE should be "a little more" than the two minutes we have taken. For Venus the zīj gives 0;4,8°, likewise reasonably close to our value.

For both the sun and Venus the constructions prescribed bear little relation to practical reality. For one thing, the measurement of angles as small as these on an instrument of this sort is out of the question. And for another, the distance of Venus from the earth is based on no observations at all, but on the assumption that the planetary system has been put together

by nesting the successive Ptolemaic configurations as closely inside each other as will insure no planet's striking its neighbor.

39. The Table of Parallax Components (f. 33v)

In order that a solar eclipse be visible to an observer it is necessary that the sun and moon have, for the time of the eclipse, very nearly the same celestial coordinates. And since the observer is on the earth's surface, not at its center, it is clear that the coordinates used must be apparent ones and not true coordinates, that is, computed with respect to the observer rather than with respect to the center of the earth. In other words, it is necessary that a correction for parallax be applied to the true coordinates resulting from ordinary determinations.

The adjusted lunar parallax (ikhtilāf-i manzar-i mu^ʿaddal-i gamar) is the difference between the parallax of the sun and moon at a time when both have the same apparent altitude. Our table breaks up this adjusted parallax in the altitude circle into its latitude and longitude components. Each pair of such components is for a conjunction occurring at an integer number of hours before, after, or at the local meridian, and at the initial point of one of the twelve zodiacal signs. Symmetry considerations permit the use of a single column for each pair of signs equidistant from the solstices; thus the second column from the left (on the transcription) serves for both Leo and Gemini, provided that the hours for the former are read from the column at the extreme right, and those for the latter from the left. The latitude components are given in minutes of arc; the longitude entries in minutes of time by which the effect of the parallax will delay or advance the time of apparent conjunction.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

Since the rate of elongation is about twelve degrees per day, division of the longitude components by two gives an approximate conversion into minutes of arc.

The top row of entries in the table gives the length of daylight when the sun is in the beginning of the sign named at the head of each respective column.

Our author's statement (f. 14r:7) that the table is from Kāshī's zīj is confirmed by examination of the latter document. It is on f. 164v of [23], where the statement is made that the data have been computed for a place of terrestrial latitude 30°. In a special study [27] it has been shown that the numbers in the table are only crudely correct, and that they were probably lifted by Kāshī from some source unknown to us.

40. Solar Eclipses (f. 33r:5 - 34v:3)

The technique for computing solar eclipses with the aid of the instrument closely resembles that used for lunar eclipses, and can be described with reference to what has preceded. Of course it is now conjunctions, not oppositions, which present possibilities for solar eclipses. Just as before, a permanent mark is put on the edge of the ruler, this time at a distance from the end of thirty-three sixtieths of the plate radius. (Cf. f. 12v:7). This implies that the (apparent) lunar latitude at conjunction must be less than thirty-three minutes, a condition which the text gives explicitly in f. 34r:9. The same limit is given in the *Almagest* ([43] vi,5). The condition also implies that

$$r_m + r_\sigma = 33'$$

where r_σ denotes the apparent radius of the solar disk. Since

COMMENTARY

we have already taken r_m to be about seventeen minutes, it follows that the solar and lunar disks are assumed to be of about the same size. Hence even if a solar eclipse is total, the duration of totality will be very short, and in fact no mark of first totality is prescribed. The portion of the ruler edge from the solar eclipse mark to the end is to be divided into twelve equal parts for the solar eclipse digits (f. 13r:2).

One complication which does not enter in the case of a lunar eclipse is the fact that for a solar eclipse the geographical location of the observer is involved. Hence the true coordinates are to be corrected for parallax by use of the table on f. 33v. The effect of parallax being always to depress the apparent position beneath the true one, it follows that if the conjunction occurs in the forenoon the (longitudinal) correction will be subtracted from the time of true conjunction, whereas it is added in the case of an afternoon conjunction. For the same reason the latitude correction is subtracted algebraically from the true latitude, north being taken as positive. Once the corrections have been made, the time from first contact to the middle of the eclipse and the magnitude of the eclipse are computed on the instrument just as they are for a lunar eclipse.

The parallax also acts to asymmetrize the necessary condition for a solar eclipse. Its effect is always to pull a celestial object down along a vertical circle from its true position. Hence when the true moon is north of the ecliptic, the allowable distance between node and conjunction is greater than when it is south. Thus the chapter on solar eclipses in the Nuzha (NS, p.281) begins with the statement that if the conjunction is after the ascending node and before the descending node, i.e. if the moon has north latitude, the critical distance is

sixteen degrees; if the moon has south latitude the distance is seven degrees.

The corresponding passage in our text, f. 33r:7-12, doubtless said the same thing in the original composition. However, it was garbled by the copyist who wrote twice the line and a half enclosed in braces in the translation. His mistake was made easier by the fact that the words for distance (bu^ḥd) and after (ba^ḥd) are written the same unless diacritical marks are used.

In his zīj ([23], f. 85r) Kāshī gives the same necessary condition as is found in our text and in the Nuzhah. He qualifies it by saying that it applies to localities in the third and fourth climates. A criterion which holds for all inhabited localities is, he says, that if the lunar latitude is north, the distance from node to conjunction shall be less than eighteen degrees; if south the distance shall be less than nine degrees. He does not derive this condition in the zīj, and it may very well be rounded off from Ptolemy's 17;41° and 8;22° arrived at in the Almagest ([43], vi,5).

41. The Solar Mean Longitude at Equinox (f. 34v:4 - 35r:3)

In Islamic astrology the instant at which the sun crosses the vernal equinoctial point is called the year-transfer (Arabic tahwīl al-sināh, or simply tahwīl, cf. [4], p.150) and was considered to be of great significance. Even to the present in Iran the situation of the individual at the moment of transfer is supposed to affect his destiny throughout the coming year.

Chapter II,13 in our text explains a method for determining the time of transfer by use of the equatorium. The same problem is treated much more elaborately in the Khāqānī Zīj ([23], ff. 90r - 91r). It can be formulated as the inverse of a more

common problem, the determination of a planetary true longitude (λ) as a function of its mean longitude ($\bar{\lambda}$), the latter being a linear function of time. Now we have the solar true longitude given, at the equinoctial point ($\lambda = 0^\circ$), and we seek the corresponding $\bar{\lambda}$. Once this is determined the corresponding time can be inferred from the mean motion table.

The solutions in the $z\bar{i}j$ are set up in terms of the mean and true centers, $\bar{\lambda}_a$ and λ_a , but the difference is trivial, since addition of the apsidal longitude to a center converts the latter into a longitude. (Cf. p.188.)

Two apparently alternative methods are given in the $z\bar{i}j$ for obtaining $\bar{\lambda}_a$ from λ_a . The first says, find from the table of solar equations (e) the equation whose argument is the given λ_a . Add the result to λ_a to obtain a first approximation to $\bar{\lambda}_a$, and repeat the process. That is, put

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{\lambda}_{a1} &= e(\lambda_a) + \lambda_a, \\ \bar{\lambda}_{a2} &= e(\bar{\lambda}_{a1}) + \lambda_a, \\ \bar{\lambda}_{a3} &= e(\bar{\lambda}_{a2}) + \lambda_a.\end{aligned}$$

Then, says Kāshī, $\bar{\lambda}_{a3}$ is the desired $\bar{\lambda}_a$. This iterative method for inverting suitable types of functions is very old, and probably of Hindu origin (cf. [1] and [32]).

The second method consists of putting

$$\text{Sin } e(\lambda_a) = \text{sin } e_{\max} \cdot \text{Sin } \lambda_a,$$

where $e_{\max} = 2;0,29^\circ$ is Kāshī's maximum solar equation. Then

$$(24) \quad \bar{\lambda}_a = e(\lambda_a) + \lambda_a = \text{arc Sin}(\text{sin } e_{\max} \cdot \text{Sin } \lambda_a) + \lambda_a.$$

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

In another part of the zij, on f. 166v, is a numerical table of the function $L(\lambda_a)$, say,

$$(25) \quad L(\lambda_a) = 2;0,29^\circ \sin \lambda_a + \lambda_a.$$

e_{\max} being a small angle, expressions (24) and (25) are approximately equivalent. Thus the table gives a third method for obtaining $\bar{\lambda}_a$.

By contrast with these elaborate and approximate techniques, the solution with the instrument is direct and, at least theoretically, precise. One puts the ruler alongside the fictitious center and parallel to the line joining the plate center and Aries 0° . The point of intersection of the ruler edge with the graduations of the ring gives immediately the mean longitude at which $\lambda = 0^\circ$, the configuration being the same as that for determining λ from $\bar{\lambda}$.

The desired $\bar{\lambda}$ having been determined, it is easy to find from the table of mean motions a date such that at the noon of that day the solar mean longitude $\bar{\lambda}_n$ exceeds the equinoctial $\bar{\lambda}$ just found, whereas on the preceding noon the solar mean longitude is exceeded by the equinoctial $\bar{\lambda}$. The expression $(\bar{\lambda}_n - \bar{\lambda})/\dot{\bar{\lambda}}$ then gives the number of hours from the instant of transfer to the later noon, provided that $\dot{\bar{\lambda}}$ is the rate of change of $\bar{\lambda}$ in degrees per hour.

For material on f. 35r:4 - 36r:5 see Section 38 above

42. The Equation of Time (f. 36r:6 - 37r:8)

Chapter II,15 of the text contains no application of the equatorium, and in fact makes no reference to either one of our instruments. The topic it discusses is, however, of at least

theoretical interest in the major problem solvable with the equatorium, the determination of planetary true positions. The table of mean motions, on which such determinations are ultimately based, gives mean positions reckoned from some epoch. Local apparent time, reckoned from successive meridian passages of the true sun, differs from mean time because of two facts. These, as the author points out, are the variable angular velocity of the true sun in the ecliptic, and the unequal projections on the celestial equator of equal segments on the ecliptic. The difference is the equation of time.

The first part of the chapter is copied verbatim from the extensive equation of time material in the Khāqānī Zīj ([23], f. 93r). At about f. 36v:10 our author abandons this source, and from there on leans heavily on Appendix 8 (p.311) of NS. The NK version has nothing on the equation of time; the subject is another afterthought of Kāshī, but his presentation is much more satisfactory than that of our text, which slavishly copies his mistakes.

For instance, f. 37r:3-37r:6 in the text is on the conversion from degrees of arc to time, 360° being equivalent to twenty-four hours. A degree of arc does correspond to four minutes of time, and a minute of arc to four seconds, but ten minutes of arc corresponds to forty seconds of time, not to a minute, as both the NS and our text have it.

In order that this chapter be useful the author should have provided the user with specific means of determining the equation of time. One way would be to give a numerical table such as that in Kāshī's own Khāqānī Zīj ([23], ff. 126v, 127r). Another way would be to give explicit directions for computing both components of the equation of time. The determination of one component, the solar equation, has already been described,

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

in Chapter II,6. Nothing has been done in the text, however, about the computation of the right ascensions which make up the second component. In NS (p.311) Kāshī describes a technique with the instrument for solving this spherical trigonometric problem. The methods resemble those used for the determination of the lunar latitude and commented on in Section 25 above.

To clarify the passage f. 36v:11 - 37r:2 we remark that the equation of time (E) at any instant t is the difference between the change of mean solar longitude ($\bar{\lambda}$) from epoch (t_0) to time t , and the change in right ascension (α) of the true sun from t_0 to t . Symbolically this is

$$\begin{aligned} E(t) &= \Delta\bar{\lambda}(t) - \Delta\alpha(t) \\ &= [\bar{\lambda}(t) - \bar{\lambda}(t_0)] - (\alpha(t) - \alpha(t_0)) \\ &= \bar{\lambda}(t) - \alpha(t) - \bar{\lambda}(t_0) + \alpha(t_0). \end{aligned}$$

The rule in the text says

$$E(t) = (\bar{\lambda}(t) + 3;57,30^\circ) - \alpha(t).$$

Comparison of the two expressions shows that we must have

$$\alpha(t_0) - \bar{\lambda}(t_0) = 3;57,30^\circ,$$

that is, the constant to be added to the mean longitude is a number which depends on the epoch of the tables and on the base longitude for which they have been computed. This $3;57,30^\circ$, however, has been taken over from NS without change, whereas the mean motion tables of the text have both a different epoch and a different base longitude than those of NS.

COMMENTARY

43. The Plate of Conjunctions (f. 37r:9 - 38r:11)

The construction of the second instrument is easily understood from the description on ff. 15r-17r, especially when considered in conjunction with the drawing on f. 17v, its modern counterpart on the opposite page, and Figure 21, reproduced from page 287 of NS.

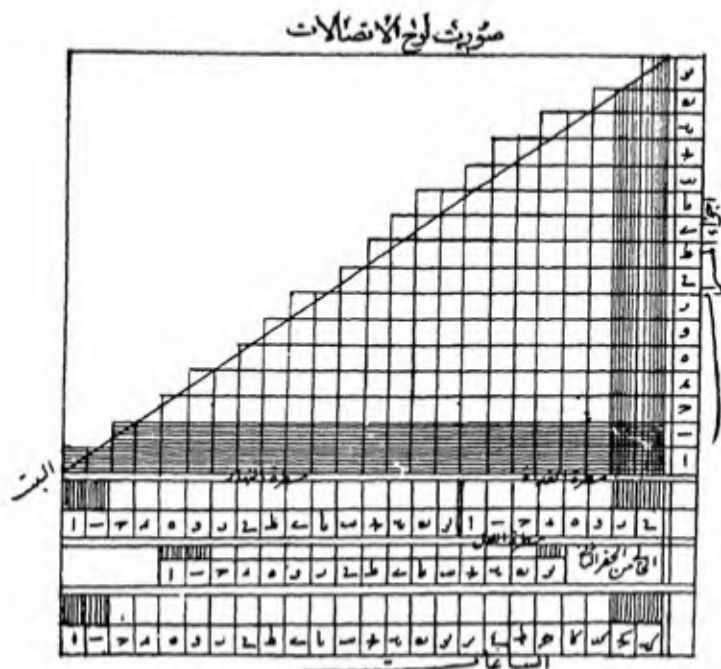


Figure 21. The Plate of Conjunctions, from NS

Of the metrological units mentioned in this passage, the size of the cubit has been discussed in Section 2 above. The

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

digit is usually taken as one twenty-fourth of a cubit.

As for the operation of the instrument, the device has been designed to predict the time of day at which a conjunction between two planets will occur, given the noon longitudes of the planets for the given day and for the following day. It is further assumed, of course, that their longitudes show one planet in the lead at the first noon, and the other at the second. Regard the variations in longitude as linear throughout the course of the day. Then if t is the time in hours from the first noon until the conjunction takes place,

$$t = \frac{24d}{b} ,$$

where d is the difference between the longitudes of the two planets (Kāshī's past distance), and b is the difference between the daily rates of the two planets (Kāshī's daily motion) for the day in question. Incidentally, the Persian-Arabic term būht, standard for the longitudinal speed of a planet, is from the Sanscrit word bhukti (cf. [4], p.105).

The turning ruler (f. 17r:12, see also Figure 2) is set so that its edge crosses the "divisions of travel" scale at distance b from the beginning of the scale. Find the point on the same scale corresponding to d , from there project horizontally to the edge of the turning ruler, thence vertically down to the base of the triangle. It is clear that the resulting point is at the required distance t from the left vertex of the triangle.

The three sliding scales at the bottom are to convert t from time measured from noon to time measured from local sunrise or sunset, depending on whether the event occurs during the day or the night respectively. To do this, set the day ruler so

COMMENTARY

that the pivot on the turning ruler is opposite the point on the day ruler corresponding to half the length of daylight for the date and locality in question. Set the head of the night ruler opposite the point on the day ruler corresponding to the number of hours of daylight. Put the head of the next-day ruler opposite the point on the night ruler corresponding to the number of hours of darkness. Then, as the author remarks, the right angle of the triangle will fall opposite the point of the next-day scale marking the hour of noon. Now the place where the vertical line distant t units from the pivot intersects one of the three slides at the base gives directly the desired hour of day or night.

In all of the late medieval Persian $zīj$ es inspected by the editor, many pages are given over to a double-entry table of the function defining t above (cf. [29], p.162). It is evident that Kāshī invented this simple device to obviate the need for such tables. As such it fulfilled a practical purpose, yielding results of sufficient precision for the problem at hand. The instrument's most serious drawback follows from the fact that the usual daily motion of the planets is of the order of a degree. That of the moon is much larger, averaging over thirteen degrees. This implies that if the conjunction does not involve the moon, the turning ruler would be elevated by so small an angle that the result would be considerably affected by small inaccuracies in the construction.

P E R S I A N G L O S S A R Y

(Readers who desire to locate in the text one of the words listed below can do so by looking up its English equivalent in the index.)

<u>see:</u> لَوْن	الوان	↑	
clearance (of an eclipse)	انجلاء	instrument	آلت
obliquity	انحراف	conjunction(s)	اتصال (pl.)
solstices	انقلابين	<u>see:</u> ثَقَب	انقباب
elliptical (?)	اهليبي	conjunction	اجتماع
apogee(s) اوج (pl.) ادجات	اوج (pl.) ادجات	<u>see:</u> جَزْء	اجزاء
mean (motions and positions)	اوساط	difference	اختلاف
<u>see:</u> وَصْف		parallax	اختلاف منظر
	ب	altitude	ارتفاع
substitute	بدل	difference marks	ارقام اختلاف
sign(s) (zodiacal) بروج (pl.)	برج (pl.) بروج	forward (motion)	استقامت
slow	بطي	direct (station)	(مقام) استقامت
distance(s) ابعاد (pl.)	بعد (pl.) ابعاد	opposition	استقبال
doubled distance	بعد مضاعف	astrolabe	اسطرلاب
rate	بهرت	digits	اصابع
	پ	<u>see:</u> قِسْم	اقسام
compass	پرگار	climate(s)	اقلیم (pl.) اقالیم

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

south	جنوب	ت	
node, lunar	جوزهر	calendar <u>or</u> date	تاریخ
sine	جیب	complete (of years)	تامه
	ح	transfer	تحويل
acute (angle)	حاده	epicycle	تدوير
product	حاصل ضرب	doubling	تضعیف
ring	حجره	equation	تعديل
motion(s)	حرکت (pl.) حرکات	equation of time	تعديل الايام
computation	حساب		بلایا
argument	حصه	differences	تفاضل
perigee	حضیض	subtraction	تفریق
depression, <u>or</u> trough	حفر	intersection	تقاطع
true	حقیقی	true (celestial) longitude	تقویم
ring	حلقه	halving	تقسیم
Aries	حل	succession of the signs	توالی بروج
	خ	ث	
quotient	خارج قسمت	hole, drill hole	ثقب
eccentric	خارج مرکز		ج
anomaly	خاصه خاصه مرکز	table(s)	جدول (pl.) جداول
compound anomaly		part(s), <u>or</u> division(s)	جزء (pl.) اجزاء
lunar eclipse	خسوف		
wood	خشب	addition	جمع

P E R S I A N G L O S S A R Y

	خط (pl.) خطوط	line(s)	خ
angle	خط ادجی	line of apsides	زاویه
right angle	خطوط عرض	latitude lines	زاویه قائمه
increasing	خیط	thread	زاید
projection, excess, lug			زائده
tongue	دایره (pl.) دوائر	circle(s)	زبانہ
Saturn	دایره عرض	latitude circle	زحل
Venus	درجہ (pl.) درجات	degree(s)	زهرہ
astronomical handbook	دور	rotation, <u>or</u> revolution	زیج
	ذ		س
year	ذراع	cubit	سال
complete (<u>or</u> elapsed) year	زورہ	epicyclic apogee	سال تامة
speedy, fast	راجع	retrograde	سریع
plane	ربع (pl.) ارباع	quadrant(s)	سطح مستوی
the two inferior planets, Mercury and Venus	رجعت	retrogradation, <u>or</u> retrograde	سفلیں
immersion (of an eclipse)	رفع کردن	elevate (a sexagesimal), to	سقوط
chain	رقم (pl.) ارقام	numeral(s), <u>or</u> mark(s)	سلسلہ
year(s)	رقم اختلاف	difference mark	سندہ (pl.) سنین
hole	رسمان	string	سوراخ
movement			سیر

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

alidade	عضاده	ش	
Mercury	عطارد	plumblin	شاخول
magnitude (of a star)	عظم	day, nychthemeron	شبه روز
node	عقده	yellow copper	شبه
mark	علامت	sun	شمس
mathematics	علم ریاضی	brass	ص
astronomy	علم نجوم	plate	صفحه
superior (planets)	علوی		
غ		ض	
extremity, extreme (value), maximum	غایت	multiplication	ضرب
ف		ط	
Persian	فارسی	plate of the heavens	طبق المناطق
excess, <u>or</u> difference	فصل	longitude, usually terrestrial longitude, but in the text (f.3r:5) celestial longitude.	طول
ecliptic, <u>or</u> zodiac	فلك البروج	longitudinal	طولی
ق		ظ	
base	قاعده	shadow	ظل
perpendicular	قائم		
<u>qibla</u> , the direction of Mecca	قبله	ع	
disk	قرس	universe	عالم
Constantinople	قسطنطنیه	latitude(s)	عرض (pl.) عروض
		bride, (theorem of the)	العروس

P E R S I A N G L O S S A R Y

sine (astrolabe or quadrant)	جیب	division(s), or part(s)	قسم (pl.) اقسام
preserved	محفوظ	diameter	قطر
axis	محور	equating diameter	قطر استواء
circumference	محیط	moon	قمر
orbit, on f.8r:11, but in an astro- nomical context the word usually denotes any circle of the celes- tial sphere whose pole is the north pole.	مدار	pivot, pole	قطب
		arc(s)	قوس (pl.) قوسی
			ک
square	ربع	fractions	کسر
place, the place of a digit in a place-value representation of a number.	رتبه	solar eclipse	کسوف
elevated	رفوع	star(s), or planet(s)	کواکب (pl.) کواکب
compound (in compound anomaly).	ترکیبی	total (of an eclipse)	کلی
center(s), (pl.) sometimes mean longitude measured from deferent apogee.	مرکز		ل
turning center fictitious center	مرکز مستعار	sights	لبنتین
apparent	مرئی	plate	لوح
pointer	ری	color(s)	لون (pl.) ألوان
Mars	مریخ		م
fictitious	مستعار	inclining, or inclined	ماایل
direct (motion), of a planet	مستقیم	explicit (years)	مبسوطه
		triangle	مثلث
		sum	مجموع

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

Libra	ميزان	ruler	سطح
inclination, <u>or</u> declination	ميل	peg	سمار
ن		path(s)	مير (pl.) ميرات
decreasing	ناقص	Jupiter	مشتري
incomplete (of years), <u>or</u> current, <u>or</u> explicit	ناقصه	ascensions, <u>or</u> risings	مطالع
copper	نحاس	adjusted	معدل
ratio	نسبت	equant	معدل المسير (or) معدل المسير
noon, or meridian	نصف النهار	equator, celestial	معدل النهار
semicircle	نصف دائرة	divisions	مقاسم
sector(s)	نطاق (pl.) نطاقات	station(s)	مقام (pl.) مقامات
opposite	نظير	true position	مقدم
decrease	نقص	stationary, stance	مقيم
point(s)	نقطه (pl.) نقاط	duration (of an eclipse), first totality	مكث
latitude point	نقطه عرض		
opposite point	نقطه محاذات	tangent	ماس
light	نور	parecliptic	مثلى
luminaries, the two, the sun and the moon)	نيران	<u>see:</u> منطقة	مناطق
و		depress (a sexa- gesimal), to	مخط کردن
chord, <u>or</u> hypotenuse	وتر	heaven(s),	منطقة (pl.) مناطق
mean (position <u>or</u> motion)	وسط (pl.) اوساط	deferent(s)	
ز		parallel	موازی
Yazdigerd	یزدجرد	position	موضع

B I B L I O G R A P H Y

1. Aaboe, A., Al-Kāshī's Iteration Method..., Scripta Mathematica, vol.20(1954), pp.24-29.
2. Barthold, Wilhelm, Ulugbeg i ego vremya, Zapiski Rossiiskoi Ak. Nauk po Ist.-Filolog. Otdeleniyu, VIII Ser., Tom xiii, 1918. German transl. by Hinz, W., Ulug Beg und seine Zeit, Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes. D.M.G., XXI Bd., Nr. 1., Leipzig, 1935; see also a note by the same author in Izvestiya Imperatorskoi Akademii Nauk, 1914, p.459.
3. Al-Battānī sive Albatēnī Opus Astronomicum, edited and translated by C.A. Nallino, 3 vols., Milan, 1899-1907.
4. Al-Bīrūnī, The Elements of Astrology by al-Bīrūnī, edited and translated by R. Ramsay Wright, London, 1934.
5. Al-Bīrūnī, Al-Qānūn'l-Mas'ūdī, 3 vols., Osmania Oriental Publications Bureau, Hyderabad-Dn., India, 1954-56.
6. British Museum Catalogue, Catalogus Codicum Orientalium Musei Britannici, Pars Secunda, Codices Arabicos Amplectens, Londini, MDCCCLII.
7. Dakhel, A., The Extraction of the n-th Root in the Sexagesimal Notation, Unpublished thesis of the American University of Beirut, 1951.
8. Dreyer, J.L.E., History of the Planetary Systems from Thales to Kepler, Cambridge, 1906; reprinted under the title, A History of Astronomy, New York, 1953.
9. Franco, S.G., Catálogo Crítico de Astrolabios Existentes en España, Madrid, 1945.
10. Ginzler, F.K., Handbuch der mathematischen und technischen Chronologie, vol.i, Leipzig, 1906.
11. Gunther, R.T., Early Science in Oxford, vol.ii, Oxford, 1923.
12. Hinz, W., Iran's Aufstieg zum Nationalstaat im fünfzehnten Jahrhundert, Berlin, 1936.

13. Hinz, W., Islamische Masse und Gewichte, Handbuch der Orientalistik, Ergänzungsband 1, Heft 1, Leiden, 1955.
14. Honigman, E., Die Sieben Klimata, Heidelberg, 1929.
15. Irani, R.A.K., Arabic Numeral Forms, Centaureus, vol.4(1955), pp.1-12.
16. Kary-Niyazov, T.N., Astronomicheskaya Shkola Ulugbeka, Izdatel'stvo Akademii Nauk SSSR, Moscow, 1950.
17. Al-Kāshī, Jamshīd Ghiyāth al-Dīn, Miftāh al-Hisāb. Published with Russian translation and commentary in [47] below.
18. Al-Kāshī, Nuzhat al-Hadā'iq, India Office MS. 210 in [48], and referred to in this book as NK.
19. Al-Kāshī, Nuzhat al-Hadā'iq, the Samarqand rescension referred to in this book as NS, lithographed in Tehran in 1889 in a single volume with the Miftāh [17].
20. Al-Kāshī, Risālah dar sharh-i ālat-i rasād. The only extant copy is bound with Leyden Cod. 945 (Warner).
21. Al-Kāshī, Al-Risālat al-muhītīyah. Published versions are [36] and [47].
22. Al-Kāshī, Sullam al-samā' = Al-Risālat al-kamālīyah, extant in many manuscript copies, and in a Tehrān lithograph edition of 1306 A.H.
23. Al-Kāshī, Zīj-i Khāqānī fī takmīl al-zīj al-Ilkhānī. The only extant copies are India Office 430 (Ethé 2232) and Aya Sofya 2692.
24. Kennedy, E.S., Al-Kāshī's "Plate of Conjunctions", Isis, vol.38(1947), pp.56-59.
25. Kennedy, E.S., A Fifteenth-Century Planetary Computer: al-Kāshī's "Ṭabaq al-Manāteq". I. Motion of

B I B L I O G R A P H Y

- the Sun and Moon in Longitude. II. Longitudes, Distances, and Equations of the Planets, Isis, vol.41(1950), pp.180-183; vol.43(1952), pp.42-50.
26. Kennedy, E.S., A Fifteenth-Century Lunar Eclipse Computer, Scripta Mathematica, vol.17(1951), pp.91-97.
27. Kennedy, E.S., Parallax Theory in Islamic Astronomy, Isis, vol.47(1956), pp.33-53.
28. Kennedy, E.S., The Sasanian Astronomical Handbook Zīj-i Shāh and the Astrological Doctrine of Transit, Journal of the American Oriental Society, vol.78(1958), pp.246-262.
29. Kennedy, E.S., A Survey of Islamic Astronomical Tables, Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, vol.46(1956), pp.123-177.
30. Kennedy, E.S., and Muruwa, Ahmad, Al-Bīrūnī on the Solar Equation, Journal of Near Eastern Studies, vol.17(1958), pp.112-121.
31. Kennedy, E.S., and Roberts, Victor, The Planetary Theory of Ibn al-Shātir, Isis, vol.50(1959), pp.227-235.
32. Kennedy, E.S., and Transue, W.R., A Medieval Iterative Algorism, American Mathematical Monthly, vol. LXIII(1956), pp.80-83.
33. Khwāndamīr (Ghiyāth al-Dīn ibn Humām al-Dīn al-Husaynī), Ta'rīkh ḥabīb al-sayr fī akhbār afrād bashar, Tehran.
34. Krause, M., Stambuler Handschriften islamischer Mathematiker, Quellen und Studien zur Geschichte der Mathematik,..., Bd.III, Abt. B, Berlin, 1936, pp.437-532.
35. Luckey, P., Die Ausziehung der n-ten Wurzel und der binomische Lehrsatz in der islamischen Mathematik, Math. Ann., vol.120(1948), pp.217-274.

THE PLANETARY EQUATORIUM

36. Luckey, P., (ed. and transl.), Der Lehrbrief über den
 Kreisumfang, Abhandlungen der deutschen Akademie
 der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, Jahrgang 1950 Nr.6,
 Berlin, 1953.
37. Luckey, P., Die Rechenkunst bei Gamšīd b. Mas'ūd al-Kāšī,
Abhandlungen für die Kunde des Morgenlandes
 XXXI, 1, Deutsche morgenländische Gesellschaft,
 Wiesbaden, 1951.
38. Meshed Catalogue, Oktā'i, Fihrist-i kutub-i kitābkhāneh-i
 mubārakeh-i ostān-i quds-i ridāvi, 3 vols., 1345
 A.H.
39. Millás Vallicrosa, J., La introducción del cuadrante con
 cursor en Europa, Isis, 17(1932), pp.218-258.
40. Mosul Catalogue, Dā'ūd al-Chalabī al-Mausilī, Kitāb makhtūṭāt
 al-Mawsil, Baghdād, 1927.
41. Neugebauer, O., The Exact Sciences in Antiquity, Second
 Edition, Providence, R.I., 1957.
42. Price, Derek J., The Equatorie of the Planetis, Cambridge,
 1955.
43. Ptolemy, Claudius, Syntaxis mathematica, ed. G.L. Heiberg,
 2 vols., Leipzig, 1898-1903; German transl. by
 K. Manitius, 2 vols., Leipzig, 1912-13; ed. with
 French transl. by M. Halma, Paris, 1813, 1816,
 (reprinted Paris: Hermann, 1927).
44. Rajā'i, Nā'ila, The Invention of Decimal Fractions in the
 East and in the West, Unpublished thesis of the
 American University of Beirut, 1951.
45. Rieu, Charles, Catalogue of the Persian Manuscripts in the
 British Museum, London, 1879-83.
46. Roberts, Victor, The Solar and Lunar Theory of Ibn al-Shāṭir,
Isis, vol.48(1957), pp.428-432.

B I B L I O G R A P H Y

47. Rosenfeld, Segal, and Yushkevich (ed. and transl.), Dzhamsbid
Giyaseddin al-Kashi, Klyuch Arifmetiki, Traktat
ob Okruzhnosti,... s prilozheniem reproduksií
arabskikh rukopisei oboikh traktatov, Moscow,
1956.
48. Ross, E.D., and Browne, E.G., Catalogue of Two Collections
of Persian and Arabic Mss. Preserved in the India
Office Library, London, 1902.
49. Sauvaire, M.H., Matériaux pour servir a l'histoire de la
numismatique et de la metrologie musulmane.
Journal Asiatique, series 8, vol.8(1886), pp.479-
536.
50. Schmalzl, P., Zur Geschichte des Quadranten bei den Arabern
München, 1929.
51. Suter, H., Die Mathematiker und Astronomen der Araber...,
Abhandlungen zur Geschichte der mathematischen
Wissenschaften..., X. Heft, Leipzig, 1900.
52. Tabātabā'ī, M., Jamshīd Ghiyāth al-Dīn Kāshānī, Āmūzesh
va parvareh, vol.10(1319 Hijrī Shamsī), No.3,
pp.1-8; No.4, pp.17-24.
53. Tabātabā'ī, M., Nāmeḥ-i pesar beh pedar, Āmūzesh va parvareh,
vol.10(1319 Hijrī Shamsī), No.3, pp.9-16, 57.
54. Ulugh Beg, Zīj-i Sultānī. Part of this has been published
as Prolégomènes des Tables astronomiques d'Oloug-
Beg, text translation and commentary, by L.A.
Sedillot, Paris, 1839, 1847, 1853.

INDEX

References to the text and translation give folio and line, separated by a colon. The corresponding numbers appear along the left-hand edge of each page of the translation. Numbers preceded by an asterisk (*) are references to pages of the commentary.

- Acute angle, 16v:11,17r:1,5.
 Addition, 3r:12.
 Adjusted, 22r:6-11,22v:8,13,
 21v:9,23r:1,24v:6,25r:5-8,
 13,25v:11,26r:3,5,26v:10,
 28r:8,29v:4,9,13.
 Agha, M.; * 188.
 Albion; * 182.
 Alidade, 11v:1,3,7,12r:5,7,
 13r:6,19v:9,12,20r:10,13,
 20v:2,9,10,21r:1,4,6,13,
 21v:5,12,13,22v:1,3,23r:1,
 4,5,7,8,23v:1,3,8,24r:12,
 13,24v:1,8-10,13,25v:6,10,
 13,26r:8,9,12,13,26v:1,2,
 28v:1,3,30v:6,8,31v:12,
 32r:2,3,7-10,34v:6,8,10,11,
 35r:6,8,12,35v:3,6,7,9,12,
 36r:1,3,4; * 11,175,180-184,
 190,192,193,195,199,200,204,
 208,209,228,230.
 Almagest; * 4,9,169,170,179,
 184,200,203,206,211,213,
 217,218,220,221,234,236.
 Altitude, 13r:6,35r:4-6,
 35v:2-4,9-13,36r:5; * 13,
 182,231,233.
 Anomaly, anomalistic, 13r:13,
 13v:1,19r:13,19v:1,3,20v:2,
 3,21r:12,21v:3,9,22r:3,10,
 11,23r:2,24v:6,25r:6,8,26r:5,
 28r:8,29v:4,9,11,13; * 184,
 185,187-189,192,193,195-197,
 208,210,215.
 Apogee(s), 7r:2,4,5,7,12,10r:4,
 13r:13,18r:3,4,7,22r:7,22v:9,
 10,25v:1,4,28v:2,4,7,30r:3,
 4,11,30v:2,4; * 167,168,171,
 175,179,188,193,197,201,212,
 216-218,220.
 Apollonius of Perga; * 215,216.
 Apparent, 14r:5,6,34r:9,11,
 35r:4,5,35v:2,4,12,36r:5.
 Appendix; * 13,14,171.
 Apsides, line of, 8r:6,7; * 170,
 171,173,175,176,179,180,196,
 201,202,211,219.
 Arc(s), 8r:9,19v:10,36v:9.
 Argument, 22v:1,2,5.
 Aries, 20v:12,21v:7.
 Ascension (right), 36r:11,36v:1,
 37r:2.

INDEX

- Astrolabe, 5v:12,6r:3,11v:3,8;
 * 4,180,182.
- Astrology; * 236.
- Astronomy,3r:4.
- Axis, 17r:9,11.
- Badr al-Dīn; * 5.
- Base, 16r:1,9,11.
- al-Battānī; * 170,186,216,217.
- Bayazid, 4r:8; * 9,185.
- al-Bīrūnī; * 4,170,222.
- Brass, 5v:11,11v:2,15r:3,
 16r:7.
- Bride (theorem of the), 15r
 (marginal note).
- Calendar, 18r:11.
- Center(s), 6r:8,13,7r:2,10,
 11,20r:2,4,7,9,11,12,20v:9,
 10,12,21r:6,12,21v:4,6,9,12,
 22r:8,22v:8,13,23r:1,25r:1,
 3,5,7,13,25v:11-13,26r:3,8,
 26v:3,13,27r:1-5,28r:10,11,
 13,28v:3,30r:7,12,13,30v:1,
 6,7,9-11,13,31r:1,32r:9,
 34v:8,35r:7,13,35v:1, center
 (longitude reckoned from
 apogee); * 188,196,202,237.
- Chain, 13r:4,5.
- Chaucer; * 165,166,200.
- Chord, 15r (marginal note).
- Circle(s), 6r:9,10,12v:1-3.
- Circumference, 6r:5.
- Clearance (of an eclipse),
 32v:8,9; * 223.
- Climate(s), 14r:7.
- Color(s), 6v:7,15v:8,10.
- Compass, 12v:6,15r (marginal
 note),24r:6,10.
- Complete (= elapsed) years,
 18v:2,4,6.
- Compound anomaly, 13v:1,
 19v:1,3,21r:13,21v:3,
 22r:10.
- Computation, 3r:11,3v:8,
 31r:4,6; * 13.
- Conjunction(s), 14r:5,6,
 33r:5,7,13,34r:3-5,34v:3,
 37r:9,38r:2,5; * 233-236,
 241-243.
- Constantinople, 16v:10; * 9,
 186.
- Contact, eclipse; * 223-225,
 227,229,230,235.
- Copper, 5v:11,11v:2,15r:2.
- Cubit, 6r:1,15r:3,4; * 165,
 241.
- Dastūr quadrant; * 182.
- Day (Nychthemeron), 36r:7,10,
 11, daylight, length of;
 * 243.
- Day ruler; * 242,243.
- Daylight, length of; * 243.

- Decreasing, decrease, 31r:5-7;
 * 222.
- Deferent(s), 7r:2,7v:2,4,10,
 11,8r:12,13,8v:1,10,10r:2,
 20r:10,21r:5,24v:5,27r:9,
 27v:3,10,28v:3,6,30v:3;
 * 11,167-173,175,179,180,
 184,192,195,200-204,206,207,
 209-214,216-221.
- Deferent, oval; * 13,214.
- Degree(s), 6v:3,9r:12.
- Depress, to, 32r:11; * 166,
 229,230.
- Depression, 12r:1.
- Descriptive geometry; * 207.
- Deviation; * 202,204.
- Diameter, 5v:13,8r:10,11,
 diameter, first; * 201,202,
 205,207,210, diameter,
 second; * 201,202,205,207.
- Difference, 26v:9,11.
- Difference circle(s), 12v:3.
- Difference mark(s), 12r:9,11,
 23v:10,24r:1; * 11,184,193,
 195,208.
- Digit (of a cubit); * 242.
- Digit(s) (eclipse), 12v:13,
 13r:2,3,15v:13,33r:2,34v:2,
 3; * 225,226,230,235.
- Direct (motion), direct
 (station), 28r:5,7,29r:7,
 12,13,29v:1-3,6-8,13.
- Disk, 5v:9,10,6r:8,13,6v:10,
 13; * 164,167,170.
- Distance(s), 9r:3,4,9, 19v:5,
 20r:3,7,8,26v:13,27r:2-5,8,
 10,27v:11,12,28r:10-13,
 28v:2,4,5,7,11-13,29r:1,2,
 5,30r:6,12,30v:1,3,10,13,
 31r:1,9,31v:6,33r:8,11,
 34r:3,35r:2,12,13,35v:8,
 36r:4,37r:10,37v:1,9,38r:4,
 7,8.
- Distances, planetary, 26v:13;
 * 12,214,231.
- Division(s), 3r:12,3v:8,
 7r:13,8v:3,11,14r:1,15r:13,
 15v:1,3,5,7,17r:2,18r:4,
 19v:6,9,12,13,20r:3,4,9,
 20v:1,11,21r:2,22r:1,22v:2,
 23r:2,10,23v:10,24r:1,6,
 24v:1,2,25r:1,25v:9,10,
 26r:1,9,27r:5,6,8,10,12,13,
 27v:1,28r:10,13,28v:8,32r:1,
 10,33r:1,2,34v:7,11,35r:7,
 8,36v:1,37v:1,8-11,38r:3.
- Doubled distance = double
 elongation, 20r:8.
- Doubling, 3r:12.
- Drill, 6v:10,17r:6,10.
- Duration (of an eclipse), see
 totality, first, 12v:10.
- Earth, 3r:9; * 12.

INDEX

- Eccentric, 8r:1,27v:9,10,
30r:7.
- Eccentricity; * 168-171,173,
175,179,180,190,211,219.
- Eclipse marks; * 11.
- Eclipse(s), see lunar eclipse
and solar eclipse; * 184.
- Ecliptic; * 12,179,198,200-
206,210,223-227,239.
- Elevate, elevated, 31v:12,
32r:1,32v:13; * 166,176.
- Elliptical (?), 8r:9.
- Elongation; * 192,221,224,
227-230,234.
- Epicycle, 8r:11,9r (marginal
note),10v:2,12r (marginal
note),24v:4,8,11,27r:4,
28r:10,13,30r:3,7,10-12,
30v:1; * 169,173,175,180,
184,192,193,195-197,200-
202,204-213,215-222.
- Epicyclic apogee, 23r:10,11.
- Equant(s), 7r:3,8v:7,21r:3;
* 171,173,175,194,196,219.
- Equating diameter, 8v:8,11,
12,9r:10,9v:1,3,23r:4,6,8,
23v:13,24r:2,24v:2,9,
25v:7,26r:12; * 177,178,
200,204,207-209,214.
- Equation(s), 3r:13,19v:5,
20r:2,21v:8,10,22r:1,2,4,
25r:12,25v:1,2,3; * 12,
190,195-197,210,218,220-222,
237,239.
- Equation of time, 36r:6,
36v:10,11,37r:7; * 13,238-
240.
- Equator, 36r:10,12,36v:9; * 239.
- Equatorium; * 8,165,173,193,
196,200,236,238,239.
- Equatorium, types of; * 11,
13,175,182.
- Equinox; * 236-238.
- Excess of revolution; * 13.
- Excess, 20v:12.
- Explicit (years), 18r:12.
- Extremity, 24v:5.
- Fast, 36r:13.
- Fictitious center, 8r:3,
19v:8,20r:2,34v:8; * 190,
238.
- Fractions, 6v:3.
- Forward (motion), 28r:2,3.
- Ghiyāth, 3v:3; * 7,9.
- Gnomon; * 4.
- Habash al-Hāsib; * 170.
- Halving, 3r:12.
- Abū Hanīfa; * 4.
- Heaven(s), 7v:10,8r:2,18r:1.
- Hindu; * 237.
- Hipparchus; * 170.

INDEX

- Hole(s), 6v:9,11,13,17r:6,7,
10,18r:6.
- Hypotenuse, 17r:8.
- Īlkhānī (Zīj, or observa-
tions); * 168,170,184,188.
- Immersion, 32r:12,32v:3,6.
- Inclination, 23r:9,11,23v:3,
5,11,24r:2,7,24v:3,5,7,11;
* 202,205,206.
- Inclining, or inclined,
23v:4,5,24v:4,12,27r:10,
27v:11.
- Incomplete (or current, of
years), 13v:3,18v:3,5,6.
- Increasing, 31r:4,5,8; * 222.
- Inferior (planets), 13v:1,
19r:12,21r:12,22r:10,
22v:8,13,23v:11,24v:4,
25r:6,11,26r:7; * 179,180,
182,185,188,193,195,196,
201-203,205,206,210,213.
- Instrument, 3v:4,6,4r:10,
5v:8,10,14r:9,18r:3,21v:10,
35r:9; * 11,12.
- Interpolation; * 216,220.
- Intersection, 26r:13.
- Iskandar; * 2,3.
- Iteration method; * 237.
- Jamshīd, 3v:4; * 7-9.
- Jummāl; * 166.
- Jupiter, 7v:9,9r:1; * 179,
182.
- Kamal al-Dīn Mahmūd; * 1.
- Kāshān; * 1-3,10,11.
- Kāshī; * 1-10,165,167,168,
170,171,173,175,176,178-180,
183-186,188-190,192,200,207,
212,213,216-218,220,221,232,
236,237,239,240,242,243.
- Kāshī, death of; * 7.
- Khaqānī zīj, 14r:7; * 1,6,7,
167,169,170,184,186,188,
232,236,239.
- al-Khwārizmī; * 186.
- Latitude, 3r:5,4r:11,9v:13,
14r:6,7,22r:12,22v:1,2,4-8,
13,24r:3-7,9,12,24v:10,13,
25r:1-4,9,11,25v:6,11-13,
26r:1-3,5,7,8,10,11,26v:2-
5,7,9,10,31v:1,13,32v:13,
34r:2,6,9,11,12; * 9,12,13,
176,178,180,182,198-207,
209-213,223,224,226,227,
233-236,240.
- Latitude circle(s), 9v:10;
* 176-178,199,204.
- Latitude line(s), 8v:9,9r:4,
9v:7,9; * 178,199,204,212.
- Latitude point(s), or marks,
8v:8,9r:7; * 11,178-180,

- 207,213.
 Libra, 8v:3,13.
 Light, 31r:7,8.
 Limits, eclipse; * 225.
 Lines, 6v:4.
 Longitude(s), 3r:5,4r:11,18v:10,
 12,19r:4,19v:4,20r:1,6,20v:13,
 21r:1,21v:7,9,22r:13,34v:5,
 6; * 9,12,167,173,180,181,
 185,186,188-200,202,216,222-
 224,233,234,237-240,242.
 Longitudinal, 21r:9,30v:6,12.
 Luminaries, the two; * 170.
 Lunar, 32v:13, 34r:6; * 173,
 174.
 Lunar eclipse(s), 4r:12,12v:7,
 9,13,31r:11,31v:3,4,6,7,9-11,
 32r:5,13,32v:7-9,12,13,33r:3,
 34r:12,34v:2; * 1,12,188,
 222-230.
 Magnitude, 31r:7,9; * 223,225,
 230,235.
 Majlis Library, Tehran; * 6,7.
 Marāghah; * 168.
 Mark(s), 7r:6,10,7v:1,2,8,
 8r:7,8,8v:4,6,10,13,9r:3,
 7,10r:3,12r:7,9,12v:6-9,
 14r:1,19v:6,7,9,12,13,20r:1,
 3,10-12,20v:1,5-8,10,21r:5,6,
 8-10,13,21v:1,4-6,11-13,
 22r:1,3-5,23r:2,3,5,7,8,
 23v:1,2,8-10,12,13,24r:1,
 3,4,7,10,24v:12,25v:10,
 26r:1,11,26v:1-3,27r:1,3,
 30v:4,5,7,9-13,32r:1,3-6,
 13,34r:11,12,34v:10,35r:11,
 35v:1,2,5,6,8,36r:1-3; * 178,
 184,190,192,195-197,204,208,
 209,228,230,234,235.
 Mars, 7v:9,9r:2; * 179,182,
 184,193,194.
 Masūdic Canon; * 4.
 Mathematics, 3r:3.
 Mean (motions and positions),
 13r:9,12,13,13v:3,14r:12,
 18r:9,10,18v:9,19r:3,7,11-
 13,19v:1,2,5,7-9,13,20r:2,
 3,6,21r:2,7,12,21v:11,13,
 22r:6,7,9,10,13,34v:4,11-
 13,35r:1,36v:4,8,9,12,13,
 37r:6; * 11-13,184,186-190,
 192,193,195-197, 222,236-
 240.
 Mercury, 8r:4,11,12,8v:5,
 9r:2,10r:2,25r:10,11,25v:3,
 26r:6,7,26v:6,28v:5; * 13,
 170-173,175,178,180,184,
 187,195,204,212,217,218,
 220,221.
 Meshed Shrine Library; * 1,
 6,7.
 Miftāḥ al-Asbāb fī 'ilm al-Zīj;
 * 6.

INDEX

- Miftāh (al-Hisāb); * 2,6,7,10.
 Model; * 171,173.
 Moon, 7r:13,7v:9,8v:2,7,13r:12,
 20r:6,8-11,20v:8,12,22r:2,
 13,22v:4,27r:10,31r:9,31v:1,
 2,4,6,12,35r:7,13; * 12,13,
 167,170,171,173,178,182,184,
 188,192,193,197-199,202,214,
 220-225,227,228,232,233,243.
 Motions, planetary, 3r:5,
 19r:1.
 Movement, 30r:8,13.
 Mu'īn al-Dīn; * 3.
 Multiplication, 3r:12,3v:8.
 Mūsā, banī; * 120.
 Nasīr al-Dīn al-Tūsī; * 168.
 Negative numbers; * 209.
 Next-day ruler; * 242.
 Night ruler; * 243.
 NK; * 10,11,176,188,239.
 Nodal lines; * 179.
 Nodes; * 180,202,203,206,
 207,211-213,226,227.
 Nodes, lunar, 13r:13,22r:13,
 22v:9,10,31v:7,33r:8,9,11;
 * 198,223,235.
 Noon, 15v:10,19r:3,5-7,9,10,
 36r:8,37r:10,12,37v:4,
 38r:4,6.
 Norm; * 169-171,175,179,184
 191,214.
 North, 25r:9,11.
 NS; * 10,11,170,171,176,177,
 180-183,189,226,235,239,
 240.
 Numerals, 6v:2; * 166.
 Nuzhah; * 2,6-11,165,169,170,
 175,160,183,186,188,200,
 215,226,228,235,236.
 Obliquity, 25v:5,6,8; * 202,
 205,210-213.
 Observatory; * 5,7,10,168.
 Opposite, 21r:12,21v:3,
 26v:3.
 Opposite point, 7r:3,8v:7,
 20r:12; * 173,192,197.
 Opposition, 31r:11,32v:2,
 34v:3; * 223-228,234.
 Orbit, 8r:11; * 173,174.
 Oval; * 171-173,217.
 π; * 5.
 Parallax, 14r:5,35r:5,11,
 35v:5,10,36r:3; * 13,230-
 232,235, parallax, adjusted;
 * 233.
 Parallel, 15v:4,5,19v:10,
 20r:13,20v:9,21r:4,23v:8,
 13,24r:13,34v:8,35v:5,36r:4;
 * 183.
 Parameters; * 168-170,175,186-
 188,226, parameters,

INDEX

- parallax; * 232.
- Parecliptic, 23v:4,5,24v:5;
 - * 12,210,
- Partial eclipse; * 223,225,226, 230.
- Parts, 6v:1,11v:7,15r:9,10, 12,15v:7,9,16v:9.
- Path(s), 15v:7,17r:2.
- Peg, 6v:12,18r:6,8; * 192.
- Perigee, 7r:13,10r:4,23r:10, 11,28v:2,4,30r:5,11; * 171, 179,201,217,218.
- Perpendicular, 25v:7.
- Persian; * 1-3,9,10,242.
- Pivot, 11v:10.
- Place, 32r:11.
- Place-value; * 166.
- Plane, 6r:4.
- Planet(s), 3r:9,7r:5,12,7v:3, 4,8r:13,8v:4,9r:4,10r:3, 12r:8,10,18r:10,13,21r:1,5, 6,8,10,21v:2,4,7,11,22r:2, 4-8,11,12,22v:9,23r:10, 23v:5,10,24r:2,24v:3,7,11, 25r:12,25v:1,11,26r:3,11, 26v:5,7,13,27r:2-4,6,27v:3, 4,28r:2,4,13,28v:3,7,29r:6, 29v:8,30r:3,9,12,30v:3,11, 31r:3,6,10,35v:2,6,8,9, 36r:1,5,36v:5
- Plate, 3v:5,5r:2,5v:8,12,6r:3, 4,5,7v:4,7,11,8r:2,8v:2,4, 6,9,10,9r:3,4,10,9v:8,10, 11v:5,7,12r:9,12v:1,13r:9, 15r:1,2,4,5,7,11,15v:12, 16r:5,16v:5,17r:8,13,18r:1, 3,21r:9,21v:1,23r:2,23v:1, 8,24r:1,27r:6,27v:2,8,9, 28r:10,11,28v:4,8,30v:5,11, 31r:1,32r:1,34v:9,36r:2, 37r:9,37v:1; * 11,13,168, 169,171,173,175,177,178, 180-183,169,190,192,193, 195,196,204,205,207-209, 221,228,238.
- Plate of conjunctions; * 13, 241-243.
- Plumbline, 6r:7.
- Point, 7r:5, point opposite, see opposite point.
- Pointer, 20r:8,13,21r:2,6,12, 21v:5,13,23r:1,23v:3,24r:1, 13,25v:13,26r:7,26v:2, 32r:2,34v:6,11,35r:6,35v:3, 8,12,36r:4.
- Position, 18r:5.
- Precession; * 167,188.
- Preserved, 28r:12,29r:1,2; * 217.
- Product, 29r:5.
- Projection, 11v:11,13,12r:1.
- Ptolemy, or Ptolemaic; * 9, 169-171,173,174,179,184, 186,190,192,197,201,204,

- 206,210-213,215,216,226,
233,236.
- Qādīzadah; * 4-7.
- Qara Yūsuf; * 2.
- Qiblah (the direction of
Mecca), 3r:8; * 7.
- Quadrant(s), 24v:6.
- Quotient, 29r:5,13.
- Qur'ān; * 3,164.
- Rate, 37r:9,37v:7.
- Ratio, 27v:1,2.
- Retrogradation, retrograde,
13v:10,11,13,28r:1,3,5,7,
8,29r:7,8,10,11,29v:2,3,
5,7,9,12; * 12,214.
- Revolution, 29r:11.
- Richard of Wallingford;
* 182.
- Right (angle), 15r (marginal
note), 16r:4, right ascen-
sion; * 240.
- Ring, 5v:9,6r:2,4,6,9,6v:10,
13,7r:1,9r:13,11v:5,14r:1,
18r:4,19v:6,12,13,20r:9,
20v:1,11,21r:2,21v:11,13,
22r:1,22v:2,23r:2,24v:2,
25r:1,26r:1,9,34v:7,11;
* 164,165,167,176-178,181,
183,189,190,192-196,199,
200,208,209,228,238.
- Risālat 'amal al-darb...;
* 7.
- Risālah dar Sākht-i Asṭurlāb;
* 6.
- Risālah fī istikhraj jaib...;
* 6.
- Risālah fī ma'rifat samt
al-qiblah; * 7.
- al-Risālat al-iqlīlāminah;
* 7.
- al-Risālat al-muhītiyah; * 5.
- Risālat al-watar w'al-jaib;
* 6.
- Rotation, 36r:10,36v:8.
- Ruler(s), 6r:7,9r:13,11v:2,
12r:1-3,5,6,12v:3,5,10,13,
13r:4,7,16r:7,9,10,12,13,
16v:1,3-5,7,8,10,17r:9,11,
12,19v:7,9-11,20r:3,11,13,
20v:8,21r:3,5,21v:4,23r:5,
6,23v:4,9,12,24r:6,10,11,
13,27r:6,27v:12,32r:4-6,8,
33r:1,3,34v:7,9,35v:5,7,
36r:2,4,37r:11,12,37v:1-7,
10,12,38r:1; * 13,180-183,
189-195,217,228,230,234,
235,238.
- Ruler, parallel; * 13,183.
- Samarqand; * 2-4,7,8,10,11.
- Sanscrit; * 242.
- Saturn, 7v:9,9r:1; * 179,182,

INDEX

- 186.
- Sector(s), 3r:7,8v:9,10r:4,
8,10v:1,30r:3-5,10,30v:2,
4,5,11,31r:2-4,7; * 11,12,
218-222.
- Semicircle, 9r:10,9v:2,5,8,
11v:10.
- Sepahsālār Library; * 3.
- Sexagesimal; * 166,167,176,
186, sexagesimal point;
* 166,167,187.
- Shadow, 31v:2,4; * 222-226.
- Shāhrukh; * 2.
- Ibn al-Shātir; * 170.
- Shīrāz; * 2,188,189.
- Sights, 13r:6; * 182.
- Sign(s), (zodiacal), 3r:7,
6r:11,9r:11,20v:4,5,
22v:6,7,24v:5,8,12,25r:4,
6-9,13,26r:4,5; * 166.
- Sine(s), 9r:12,9v:4,11v:8;
* 6, sine, definition of;
* 176.
- Slide rule; * 242, slide
rule, circular; * 189.
- Slope, 11v:12.
- Slow, 30r:9,36r:13.
- Solar eclipse(s), 4r:12,
12v:8,13r:2,14r:11,12,
33r:5,12,13,34r:6,7,10,
11,13,34v:1; * 12,233-
236.
- Solstices, 32r:2.
- South, 25r:5,10.
- Speedy, 30r:9.
- Square(s), 15r (marginal note).
"Squeezing" parameters; * 186,
187.
- Stance, 29v:6,7.
- Station(s), 3r:6,13v:9,10,13,
14r:2,28r:2,3,7,9,29r:3,7,
8,10-13,29v:1-7,10,30r:1;
* 214-217.
- Stationary, 28r:6.
- String, 13r:7.
- Sublime Porte, the, 4v:1.
- Substitute, 24r:7-9,12; * 209.
- Subtraction, 3r:11.
- Succession of the signs,
6r:12,7r:6,20v:2.
- Sullam al-Samā'; * 1.
- Sultan, 4r:2,8,9.
- Sum, 26v:9,11.
- Sun, 7r:12,8r:1-3,12r:8,13r:12,
18r:3-5,19r:12,19v:1,5,
20r:3,6,21r:7,12,22r:1,6,9,
27r:8,27v:9,10,30r:3,6,8,9,
31r:9,34v:5,6,35r:9,12,
36r:11,12,36v:6,9,12,13,
37r:2; * 12,167,170,173,
175,190,191,193,195,196,
219,223-225,227,232,233,
236.
- Superior (planets), 8v:1,

INDEX

- 9r:8,13r:12,19r:13,21r:8,
11,22r:9,22v:7,9,10,23v:3,
24v:4,25r:4,29r:1; * 178,
179,193,195,196,202,206,213.
Syzygy; * 227.
- Tabātabā'ī; * 1,3,7.
- Table(s), 10r:7,9,10,10v:1,
13r:9,10,13v:7,12,29r:4,
34r:1; * 11,167,168,175,179,
184-189,192,196,206,213,218,
221,233,234,237-240,243.
- Tamerlane; * 2.
- Tangent, 9v:9,12,10r:1,31v:4.
- Text, history of the; * 9.
- Thread, 17r:7.
- Time, equation of; * 238-240.
- Tongue, 6r:5,6,6v:10; * 165,
170,192.
- Total (eclipse), 32r:13,
32v:10; * 223,225,226,228,
230,235.
- Totality (first) see also
duration, 12v:10,32r:7,
32v:1,2,4,5,7.
- Transfer, year, 34v:4,6,12,
35r:1,2; * 12,236-238.
- Triangle, 15r:5,7-9,15v:11,
16r:1,4,9,11,16v:7,11,13,
17r:8.
- Trough, 15v:12,16r:1-3,5,6,8,
16v:1,2,4,12,37r:13.
- True, 14r:5,20r:1,6,20v:13,
21r:1,21v:7,9,22r:13,
35r:4,5,35v:3,9,11,13,
36r:7,10,36v:2,10,12,
37r:7.
- True position, 19v:13,20r:1,
2,20v:11,13,21v:6,7,22r:5.
- Turning center, 8r:4,5,8v:6;
* 171,173.
- Turning ruler, 17r:12; * 242,
243.
- al-Ṭūsī, see Nasīr al-Dīn
al-Ṭūsī.
- Ulugh Beg; * 2-7,10,216,217.
- Universe, 19v:5,26v:13,
27r:3,5,28r:10,30r:7,12,
30v:2,35r:13,35v:1.
- Venus, 7v:9,8v:1,9r:2,9v:13,
25r:9,10,25v:2,26r:6,
26v:5,35r:10,13; * 169,
170,173,178,180,195,204,
206,212,232.
- Abū al-Wafā'; * 170.
- Wood, 5v:12,11v:3,15r:2,
16r:7.
- Yazdiferd, 13v:3; * 167,185,
188,189.
- Year(s), 13v:3,18r:12,13,

INDEX

- 18v:1-6,8,9,36v:6.
 Yellow copper, 5v:12.
- al-Zarqalla (= al-Zarqālī);
 * 170.
- Zīj, 3r:10,3v:7,4r:12,10r:7,
 14r:7,30v:2; * 1,4,5,7,167,
- 188,196,219,220,236-239,243.
 Zīj-ī Īlkhānī, see Īlkhānī
 Zīj.
 Zīj-i Khāqānī, see Khāqānī
 Zīj.
 Zīj al-Tashīlāt; * 6.
 Zodiac, 6v:3.

5

"A book that is shut is but a block"

CENTRAL ARCHAEOLOGICAL LIBRARY

GOVT. OF INDIA
Department of Archaeology
NEW DELHI.

Please help us to keep the book
clean and moving.

S. B., 14B, N. DELHI.